

# LINEAR SYSTEMS, MATRICES, AND VECTORS

Now that I've been teaching Linear Algebra for a few years, I thought it would be great to integrate the more advanced topics such as vector spaces, the Euclidean dot product, and matrix operations early on in our class, instead of hurrying to fit everything in late in the course. So...hold on to your seats...we're in for a bumpy ride!

## 1.1 Linear Systems and Matrices

### Learning Objectives

1. Use back-substitution and Gaussian elimination to solve a system of linear equations
2. Determine whether a system of linear equations is consistent or inconsistent
3. Find a parametric representation of a solution set
4. Write an augmented or coefficient matrix from a system of linear equations
5. Determine the size of a matrix

### Let's Do Our Math Stretches!

1. Solve the following systems of linear equations

a.

$$\begin{array}{l} -x + 8y = 3 \\ 6x = 12 \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{l} R1 \\ R2 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{l} -x + 8y = 3 \\ 6x + 0y = 12 \end{array} \rightarrow \frac{1}{6}R2 \rightarrow \begin{array}{l} -x + 8y = 3 \\ x = 2 \end{array} \rightarrow y = \frac{5}{8}$$

$\left\{ \left( 2, \frac{5}{8} \right) \right\}$   
 Consistent system  
 with independent  
 equations

b.

$$\begin{array}{l} 3x + y - z = 15 \\ 2y + 4z = 0 \\ z = 1 \end{array} \rightarrow \begin{array}{l} x = 6 \\ y = -2 \end{array}$$

$\left\{ (6, -2, 1) \right\}$   
 consistent system  
 w/ independent equations

## DEFINITION OF A LINEAR EQUATION IN $n$ VARIABLES

A linear equation in  $n$  variables  $x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_n$  has the form

$$a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 + a_3x_3 + \dots + a_nx_n = b$$

The coefficients  $a_1, a_2, a_3, \dots, a_n$  are real numbers, and the constant term  $b$  is a real number. The number  $a_1$  is the leading coefficient, and  $x_1$  is the leading variable.

\*Linear equations have no products or roots of variables and no variables involved in transcendental functions.

Example 1: Give an example of a linear equation in three variables.

$$4x_1 + 0x_2 + 3x_3 = 10 \rightarrow 4x_1 + 3x_3 = 10$$

## DEFINITION OF SOLUTIONS AND SOLUTION SETS

A solution of a linear equation in  $n$  variables is a sequence of  $n$  real numbers  $s_1, s_2, s_3, \dots, s_n$  arranged to satisfy the equation when you substitute the values

$$x_1 = s_1, x_2 = s_2, x_3 = s_3, \dots, x_n = s_n$$

into the equation. The set of all solutions of a linear equation is called its solution set, and when you have found this set, you have satisfied the equation. To describe the entire solution set of a linear equation, use a parametric representation.

Example 2: Solve the linear equation.

$$x_1 + x_2 = 10 \rightarrow x_1 = 10 - x_2$$

$$\text{Let } x_2 = t, x_1 = 10 - t$$

$\{ (10-t, t) : t \in \mathbb{R} \}$

describe the form of the solution(s)

such that belongs to is an element of

explanation of the format of any parameters and/or limitations





Example 4: Graph the following linear systems and determine the solution(s), if a solution exists.

a.

$$\underline{x - y = 8}$$

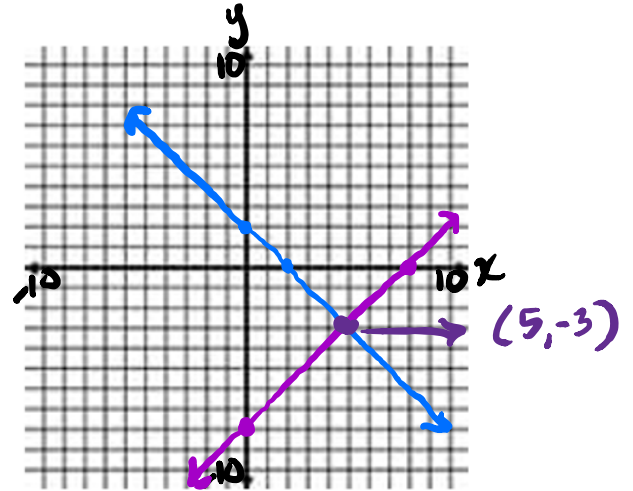
$$\underline{x + y = 2}$$

$$2x = 10$$

$$x = 5$$

$$y = -3$$

$\{(5, -3)\}$   
consistent system  
w/ independ. equations

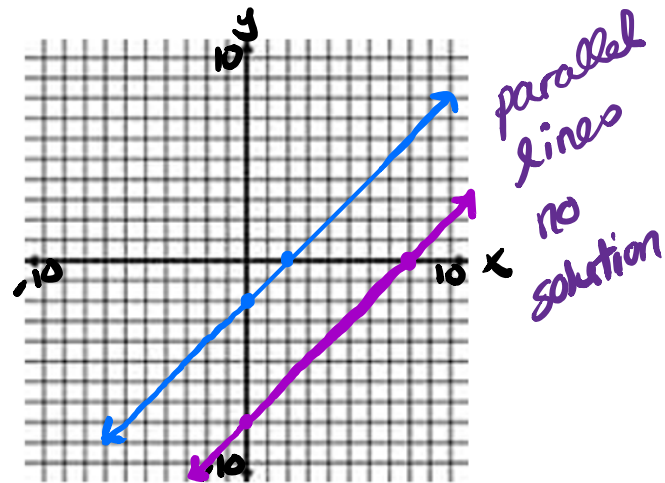


b.

$$\underline{x - y = 8}$$

$$\underline{x - y = 2}$$

$\{ \}$  or  $\emptyset$   
inconsistent system  
with independent  
equations



c.

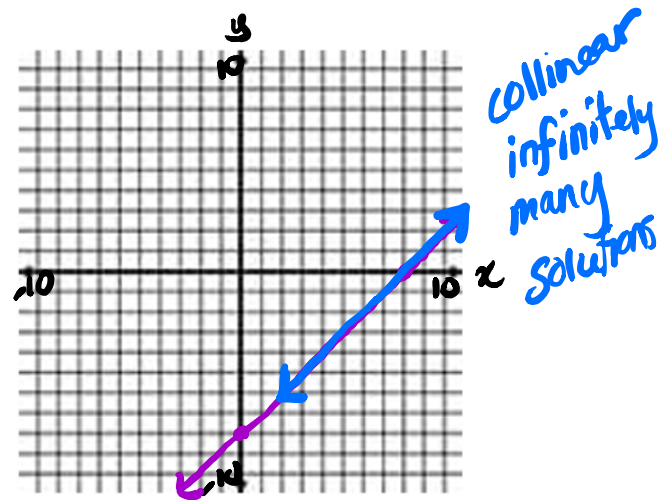
$$2x - 2y = 16 \rightarrow x - y = 8$$

$$3x - 3y = 24 \rightarrow x - y = 8$$

$$x - y = 8 \rightarrow x = y + 8 \rightarrow x = t + 8$$

Let  $y = t$

$\{(t+8, t) : t \in \mathbb{R}\}$   
consistent system  
with dependent equations



## NUMBER OF SOLUTIONS OF A SYSTEM OF EQUATIONS

For a system of linear equations, precisely one of the following is true.

The system has exactly one solution. (consistent system).

The system has infinitely many solutions (consistent system)

The system has no solution (inconsistent system).

## TYPES OF SOLUTIONS

2 Equations, 2 Variables

What did we learn from the last example?

Inconsistent:

parallel lines

Consistent:

cross at one point  
or collinear

3 Equations, 3 Variables

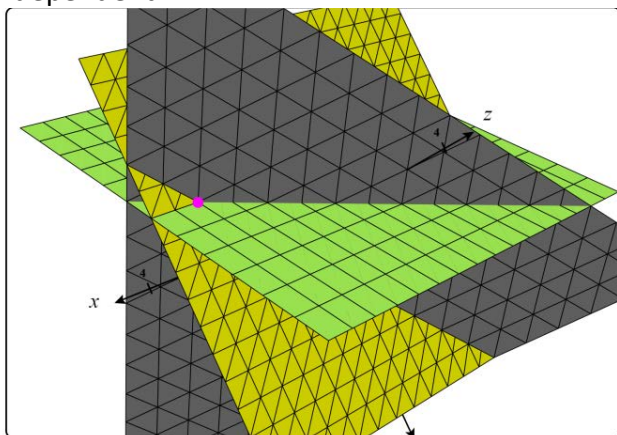
Inconsistent

[Parallel Planes](#) [Intersecting Two at a Time \(1\)](#) or [Intersecting Two at a Time \(2\)](#)

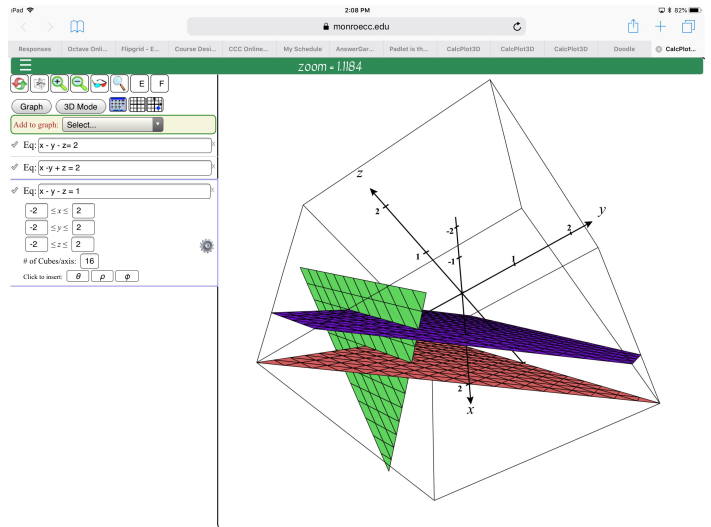
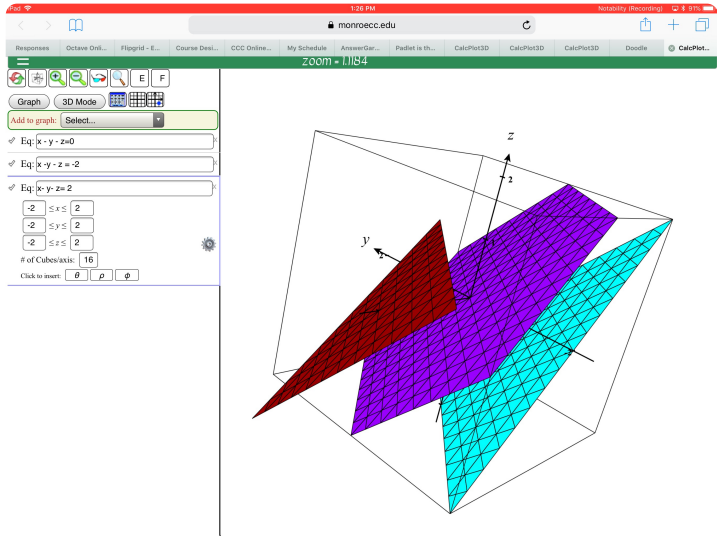
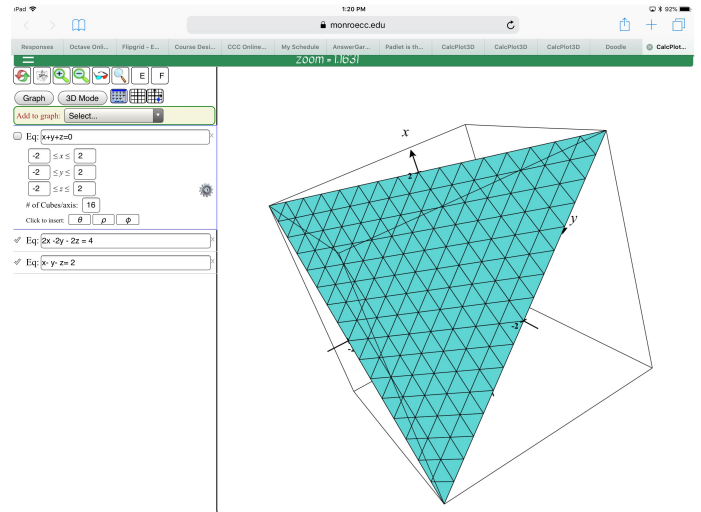
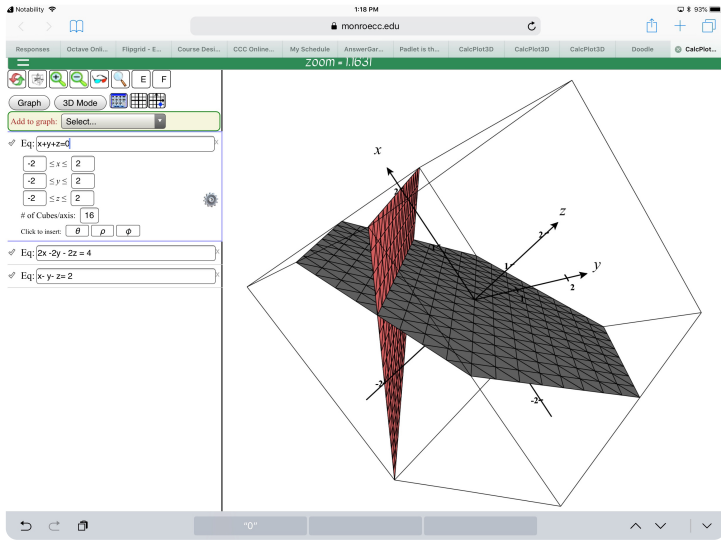
Consistent

Dependent: [Linear Intersection](#) [Planar Intersection](#)

Independent:



<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Point: (3,-1,1)	x
	Color: <input type="text"/>	Size: <input type="text"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Eq: z=1	x
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Eq: -y+z=2	x
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Eq: x+y+z=3	x



## OPERATIONS THAT PRODUCE EQUIVALENT SYSTEMS

Each of the following operations on a system of linear equations produces an equivalent system.

Add two equations.

Multiply an equation by a nonzero constant.

Add a multiple of an equation to another equation.

The evil plan is to get the system into row-echelon form.

$$a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + a_{13}x_3 = b_1$$

$$a_{22}x_2 + a_{23}x_3 = b_2$$

$$a_{33}x_3 = b_3$$

## DEFINITION OF A MATRIX

If  $m$  and  $n$  are positive integers, an  $m \times n$  matrix (read  $m$  by  $n$ ) matrix is a rectangular array

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix}$$

in which each entry,  $a_{ij}$ , of the matrix is a number. An  $m \times n$  matrix has  $m$  rows and  $n$  columns.

Matrices are usually denoted by capital letters.

\*The entry  $a_{ij}$  is located in the  $i$ th row and the  $j$ th column. The index  $i$  is called the row index because it identifies the row in which the entry lies, and the index  $j$  is called the column index because it identifies the column in which the entry lies.

\*\*A matrix with  $m$  rows and  $n$  columns is said to be of size  $m \times n$ . When  $m = n$ , the matrix is called square of order  $n$  and the entries  $a_{11}, a_{22}, a_{33}, \dots$  are called the main diagonal entries.

### THREE IMPORTANT TYPES OF MATRICES

- Diagonal Matrices are square matrices with one's along the main diagonal, and zeros elsewhere. The main diagonal goes from the top left corner to the bottom right corner.
- Coefficient Matrices are formed using the coefficients of the variables in systems of linear equations.
- Augmented Matrices adjoin the coefficient matrix with the column matrix of constants.

Example 5: Consider the following system of linear equations.

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 + x_3 &= 2 \\ -x_1 + 3x_2 - 2x_3 &= 8 \\ 2x_1 + x_2 - x_3 &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

- a. Find the coefficient matrix (matrix of coefficients) and determine its size.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 1 \\ -1 & 3 & -2 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix}, \text{ size } 3 \times 3$$

- b. Find the augmented matrix and determine its size.

$$B = \left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -1 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 3 & -2 & 8 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 & 1 \end{array} \right], \text{ size } 3 \times 4$$

$\vec{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 8 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$

- c. Solve the system and determine if it is consistent.

$$B = \left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -1 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 3 & -2 & 8 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 & 1 \end{array} \right]$$

$\downarrow$   
 $R_1 + R_2 \rightarrow R_2$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -1 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 & -1 & 10 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 & 1 \end{array} \right]$$

$\downarrow$   
 $-2R_1 + R_3 \rightarrow R_3$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -1 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 & -1 & 10 \\ 0 & 3 & -3 & -3 \end{array} \right]$$

$\downarrow$   
 $\frac{1}{3}R_3 \rightarrow R_3$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -1 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 & -1 & 10 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & -1 \end{array} \right]$$

$\downarrow$   
 $-\frac{1}{2}R_2 + R_3 \rightarrow R_3$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -1 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 & -1 & 10 \\ 0 & 0 & -\frac{1}{2} & -6 \end{array} \right]$$

$\rightarrow$

$$\begin{aligned} 1x_1 - 1x_2 + 1x_3 &= 2 \\ 2x_2 - 1x_3 &= 10 \\ -\frac{1}{2}x_3 &= -6 \end{aligned}$$

$$\rightarrow x_3 = 12, x_2 = 11, x_1 = 1$$

$$\{(1, 11, 12)\}$$

- d. Check your result using [Octave](#), which has the same commands as Matlab but is free 😊.
- Go to the very bottom of the page and enter the augmented matrix. I named the augmented matrix B. You use brackets to designate a matrix, use a space between entries, and a semicolon between rows.



```
» B = [1 -1 1 2; -1 3 -2 8; 2 1 -1 1]
```

- After hitting “enter” the screen looks like this (you’ll have a different command line number):

```
octave:18> B = [1 -1 1 2; -1 3 -2 8; 2 1 -1 1]
B =

     1  -1   1   2
    -1   3  -2   8
     2   1  -1   1
```

Now type in `rref(B)` to get the reduced row-echelon form of the augmented matrix:

```
octave:18> B = [1 -1 1 2; -1 3 -2 8; 2 1 -1 1]
B =

     1  -1   1   2
    -1   3  -2   8
     2   1  -1   1

» rref(B)
```

After hitting enter, you’ll see:

```
octave:18> B = [1 -1 1 2; -1 3 -2 8; 2 1 -1 1]
B =

     1  -1   1   2
    -1   3  -2   8
     2   1  -1   1

octave:19> rref(B)
ans =

    1.00000    0.00000    0.00000    1.00000
    0.00000    1.00000    0.00000   11.00000
    0.00000    0.00000    1.00000   12.00000
```

- How should we interpret the results?

$$\begin{aligned} 1x_1 &= 1 \\ 1x_2 &= 11 \\ 1x_3 &= 12 \end{aligned} \rightarrow$$

$\{(1, 11, 12)\}$   
consistent system  
with independent equations

## 1.2 Gauss-Jordan Elimination

### Learning Objectives

1. Use matrices and Gaussian elimination with back-substitution to solve a system of linear equations
2. Use matrices and Gauss-Jordan elimination to solve a system of linear equations
3. Solve a homogeneous system of linear equations
4. Fit a polynomial function to a set of data points
5. Set up and solve a system of equations to represent a network

### Let's Do Our Math Stretches!

1. Interpret the following **augmented** matrices.

a.

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 8 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 7 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 5 \end{bmatrix} \rightarrow x_1 = 8, x_2 = 7, x_3 = 5$$

b.

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 & -2 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & 11 \end{bmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{aligned} x_1 - x_2 &= -2 \rightarrow x_1 = x_2 - 2 = 9 - 3x_3 \\ x_2 + 3x_3 &= 11 \rightarrow x_2 = 11 - 3x_3 \end{aligned}$$

Let  $x_3 = t$ ,  $x_2 = 11 - 3t$ ,  $x_1 = 9 - 3t$

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= 9 - 3t \\ x_2 &= 11 - 3t, t \in \mathbb{R} \\ x_3 &= t \end{aligned}$$

c.

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 0 & 4 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 7 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= 3 + 10t \\ x_2 &= -7t \\ x_3 &= 0 \\ x_4 &= t \end{aligned} \quad x_3 = s, s, t \in \mathbb{R}$$



## ELEMENTARY ROW OPERATIONS

1. Add two rows.
2. multiply a row by a nonzero constant.
3. Add a multiple of a row to another row.
4. Interchange (swap) any 2 rows.

Note: These operations also work for columns.

## DEFINITION OF ROW-ECHELON FORM AND REDUCED ROW-ECHELON FORM

A matrix in row-echelon (ref) form has the following properties.

Any rows consisting entirely of zero occur at the bottom of the matrix. For each row that does not consist entirely of zeros, the first nonzero entry is 1 (called a leading 1). For two successive nonzero rows, the leading 1 in the higher row is farther to the left than the leading 1 in the lower row. A matrix in row-echelon form is in reduced row-echelon (rref) form when every column that has a leading 1 has zeros in every position above and below its leading 1.

Example 1: Determine which of the following augmented matrices are in row-echelon (ref) form.

a.

$$\left[ 1 \mid -\frac{1}{2} \right]$$

yes ☺

b.

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -1 & 0 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 7 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 12 \end{array} \right]$$

yes - ref  
but not rref

c.

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & -1 & -8 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 25 \\ 0 & 1 & 15 & -3 \end{array} \right]$$

no

## GAUSS-JORDAN ELIMINATION

1. Write the augmented matrix of the system of linear equations.
2. Use elementary row operations to find an equivalent matrix in reduced row-echelon form. If this is not possible, write the equivalent system of equations and back substitute.
3. Interpret your results.

Example 2: Solve the system using Gauss-Jordan Elimination.

a.

$$x_1 + x_2 - 5x_3 = 3$$

$$x_1 - 2x_3 = 1$$

$$2x_1 - x_2 - x_3 = 0$$

$$b = \left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & -5 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 & -2 & 1 \\ 2 & -1 & -1 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

↓

$$-R_1 + R_2 \rightarrow R_2$$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & -5 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & 3 & -2 \\ 2 & -1 & -1 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

↓

$$-2R_1 + R_3 \rightarrow R_3$$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & -5 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & 3 & -2 \\ 0 & -3 & 9 & -6 \end{array} \right]$$

↓

$$-3R_2 + R_3 \rightarrow R_3$$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & -5 & 3 \\ 0 & -1 & 3 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

$$x_1 + x_2 - 5x_3 = 3$$

$$-x_2 + 3x_3 = -2$$

$$0 = 0 \text{ true!}$$

$$x_1 = 3 - x_2 + 5x_3$$

$$x_2 = 3x_3 + 2$$

$$x_1 = 3 - (3x_3 + 2) + 5x_3$$

$$x_1 = 2x_3 + 1 = 2t + 1$$

$$x_2 = 3t + 2$$

$$x_3 = t$$

$\{(2t+1, 3t+2, t) : t \in \mathbb{R}\}$   
consistent system  
with dependent equations

b.

$$5x_1 - 3x_2 + 2x_3 = 3$$

$$2x_1 + 4x_2 - x_3 = 7$$

$$x_1 - 11x_2 + 4x_3 = 3$$

$$B = \left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 5 & -3 & 2 & 3 \\ 2 & 4 & -1 & 7 \\ 1 & -11 & 4 & 3 \end{array} \right]$$

$$\downarrow -2R_1 + 5R_2 \rightarrow R_2$$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 5 & -3 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 26 & -9 & 29 \\ 1 & -11 & 4 & 3 \end{array} \right]$$

$$\downarrow -R_1 + 5R_3 \rightarrow R_3$$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 5 & -3 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 26 & -9 & 29 \\ 0 & -52 & 18 & 12 \end{array} \right]$$

$$\rightarrow 2R_2 + R_3 \rightarrow R_3$$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 5 & -3 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 26 & -9 & 29 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 10 \end{array} \right]$$

↓

$$5x_1 - 3x_2 + 2x_3 = 3$$

$$26x_2 - 9x_3 = 29$$

$$0 = 10$$

FALSE!  
No solution

$\{ \}$ , an inconsistent system with independent equations.

## DEFINITION OF HOMOGENEOUS SYSTEMS OF LINEAR EQUATIONS

Systems of equations in which each of the constant terms is zero are called

homogeneous

A homogeneous system of  $m$  equations in  $n$  variables has the form

$$a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + a_{13}x_3 + \cdots + a_{1n}x_n = 0$$

$$a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + a_{23}x_3 + \cdots + a_{2n}x_n = 0$$

$$a_{31}x_1 + a_{32}x_2 + a_{33}x_3 + \cdots + a_{3n}x_n = 0$$

$$\vdots \quad \vdots \quad \vdots \quad \vdots \quad \vdots$$

$$a_{m1}x_1 + a_{m2}x_2 + a_{m3}x_3 + \cdots + a_{mn}x_n = 0$$

\*\*Homogeneous linear systems either have the trivial solution, or infinitely

many solutions

\* Trivial solution:  $x_1 = x_2 = \cdots = x_n = 0$

Example 3: Solve the homogeneous linear system corresponding to the given coefficient matrix.

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \vec{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= 0 \\ x_2 + x_3 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\{ (0, -s, s, t) : s, t \in \mathbb{R} \} \text{ consistent system w/ dependent equations}$$

**THEOREM 1.1: THE NUMBER OF SOLUTIONS OF A HOMOGENEOUS SYSTEM**

Every homogeneous system of linear equations is consistent. If the system has fewer equations than variables, then it must have infinitely many solutions.

**POLYNOMIAL CURVE FITTING**

Suppose  $n$  points in the  $xy$ -plane represent a collection of data and you are asked to find a polynomial function of degree  $n-1$  whose graph passes through the specified points. This is called polynomial curve fitting. If all  $x$ -coordinates are distinct, then there is precisely one polynomial function of degree  $n-1$  (or less) that fits the  $n$  points. To solve for the  $n$  coefficients of  $p(x)$ , substitute each of the  $n$  points into the polynomial function and obtain  $n$  linear equations in  $n$  variables

$$a_0, a_1, a_2, \dots, a_{n-1}$$

$$\begin{aligned} a_0 + a_1x_1 + a_2x_1^2 + \dots + a_{n-1}x_1^{n-1} &= y_1 \\ a_0 + a_1x_2 + a_2x_2^2 + \dots + a_{n-1}x_2^{n-1} &= y_2 \\ a_0 + a_1x_3 + a_2x_3^2 + \dots + a_{n-1}x_3^{n-1} &= y_3 \\ \vdots & \\ a_0 + a_1x_n + a_2x_n^2 + \dots + a_{n-1}x_n^{n-1} &= y_n \end{aligned}$$

Example 4: Determine the polynomial function whose graph passes through the points, and graph the polynomial function, showing the given points.

$(1, 8), (3, 26), (5, 60)$

$n = 3$  because we have 3 ordered pairs

$$n - 1 = 2$$

$$P(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2$$

$$P(1) = 8 = a_0 + a_1(1) + a_2(1)^2 = a_0 + a_1 + a_2$$

$$P(3) = 26 = a_0 + a_1(3) + a_2(3)^2 = a_0 + 3a_1 + 9a_2$$

$$P(5) = 60 = a_0 + a_1(5) + a_2(5)^2 = a_0 + 5a_1 + 25a_2$$

$$a_0 + a_1 + a_2 = 8$$

$$a_0 + 3a_1 + 9a_2 = 26$$

$$a_0 + 5a_1 + 25a_2 = 60$$

$$B = \left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 & 8 \\ 1 & 3 & 9 & 26 \\ 1 & 5 & 25 & 60 \end{array} \right]$$

↓

$-R_1 + R_2 \rightarrow R_2$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 & 8 \\ 0 & 2 & 8 & 18 \\ 1 & 5 & 25 & 60 \end{array} \right]$$

$$\begin{array}{l} -R_1 + R_3 \\ \downarrow \\ R_3 \end{array} \left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 & 8 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 9 \\ 0 & 4 & 24 & 52 \end{array} \right]$$

↓  $-4R_2 + R_3 \rightarrow R_3$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 & 8 \\ 0 & 1 & 4 & 9 \\ 0 & 0 & 8 & 16 \end{array} \right]$$

$$a_0 + a_1 + a_2 = 8$$

$$a_1 + 4a_2 = 9$$

$$8a_2 = 16$$

$$a_2 = 2, a_1 = 1, a_0 = 5$$

## NETWORK ANALYSIS

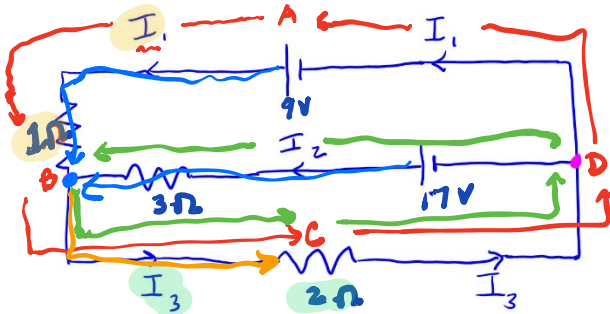
Networks composed of branches and junctions are used as models in fields like economics, traffic analysis, and electrical engineering. In an electrical network model, you use Kirchoff's Laws

to find the system of equations.

### Kirchoff's Laws

1. Junctions: All the current flowing into a junction must flow out of it.
2. Paths: The sum of the  $IR$  terms, where  $I$  denotes current and  $R$  denotes resistance in any direction around a closed path is equal to the total voltage in the path in that direction.

Example 5: Determine the currents in the various branches of the electrical network. The units of current are amps and the units of resistance are ohms.



PATH: ABCDA

$$1I_1 + 2I_3 = 9$$

current

$$I_1 + I_2 = I_3$$

PATH: BCDB

$$2I_3 + 3I_2 = 17$$

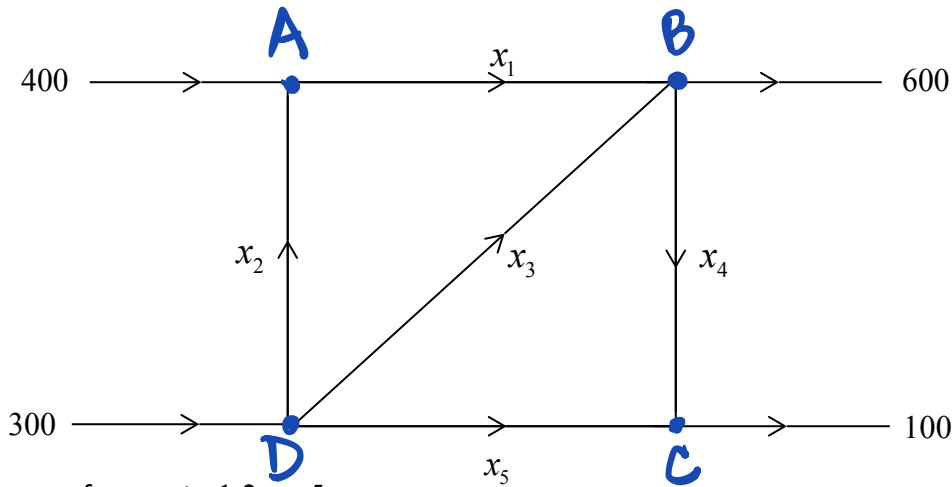
$$\begin{aligned} I_1 + 2I_3 &= 9 \\ I_1 + I_2 - I_3 &= 0 \\ 3I_2 + 2I_3 &= 17 \end{aligned}$$

→

$$\begin{aligned} I_1 &= 1A \\ I_2 &= 3A \\ I_3 &= 4A \end{aligned}$$

A denotes  
amperes

Example 6: The figure below shows the flow of traffic through a network of streets.



Solve this system for  $x_i, i=1,2,\dots,5$ .

$$400 + x_2 = x_1$$

$$x_1 + x_3 = 600 + x_4$$

$$x_4 + x_5 = 100$$

$$300 = x_2 + x_3 + x_5$$

$$x_1 - x_2 = 400$$

$$x_1 + x_3 - x_4 = 600$$

$$x_4 + x_5 = 100$$

$$x_2 + x_3 + x_5 = 300$$

Find the traffic flow when  $x_3 = 0$  and  $x_5 = 100$ .

$$x_1 = 700 - 0 - 100 = 600$$

$$x_2 = 300 - 0 - 100 = 200$$

$$x_3 = 0$$

$$x_4 = 100 - 100 = 0 \text{ and } x_5 = 100$$

Find the traffic flow when  $x_3 = x_5 = 100$ .

$$x_1 = 700 - 100 - 100 = 500$$

$$x_2 = 300 - 100 - 100 = 100$$

$$x_4 = 100 - 100 = 0 \text{ and } x_3 = x_5 = 100$$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccccc|c} 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 400 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 & 0 & 600 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 100 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 300 \end{array} \right]$$

$$\downarrow$$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccccc|c} 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 700 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 300 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & 100 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= 700 - x_3 - x_5 \\ x_2 &= 300 - x_3 - x_5 \\ x_4 &= 100 - x_5 \end{aligned}$$

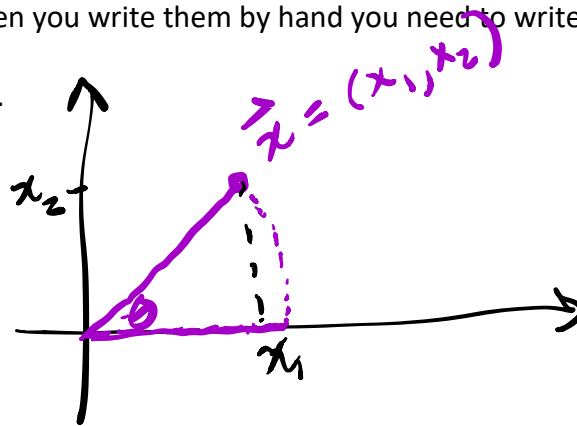
# 1.3 The Vector Space $R^n$

## Learning Objectives

1. Perform basic vector operations in  $R^2$  and represent them graphically
2. Perform basic vector operations in  $R^n$
3. Write a vector as a linear combination of other vectors
4. Perform basic operations with column vectors
5. Determine whether one vector can be written as a linear combination of 2 or more vectors
6. Determine if a subset of  $R^n$  is a subspace of  $R^n$

## VECTORS IN THE PLANE

A vector is characterized by two quantities, length and direction, and is represented by a directed line segment. Geometrically, a vector in the plane is represented by a directed line segment with its initial point at the origin and its terminal point at  $(x_1, x_2)$ . Boldface lowercase letters often designate vectors when you're using a computer, but when you write them by hand you need to write an arrow above the letter designating the vector.



The same ordered pair used to represent its terminal point also represents the vector. That is,  $\vec{x} = (x_1, x_2)$ . The coordinates  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  are called the

components of the vector  $\mathbf{x}$ . Two vectors in the plane  $\mathbf{u} = (u_1, u_2)$  and  $\mathbf{v} = (v_1, v_2)$  are

equal if and only if  $u_1 = v_1$  and  $u_2 = v_2$ . What do you think the zero vector is

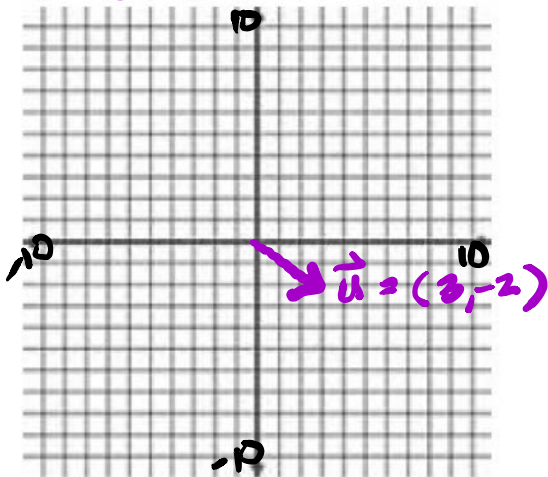
for  $R^2$ ?  $\vec{0} = (0, 0)$  How about  $R^3$ ?  $\vec{0} = (0, 0, 0)$   $R^6$ ?  $\vec{0} = (0, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0)$

$R^n$ ?  $\vec{0} = (0, 0, 0, \dots, 0)$   
 $n$  zero components

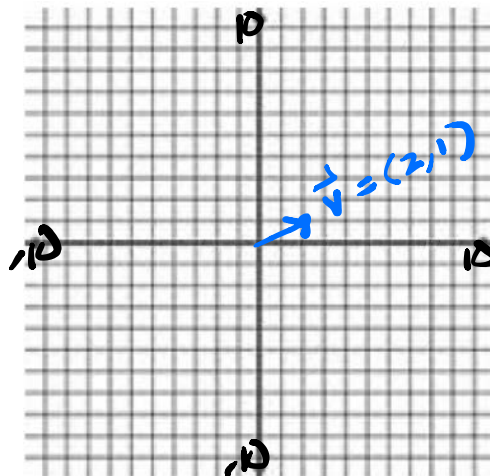


Example 1: Use a directed line segment to represent the vector, and give the graphical representation of the vector operations.

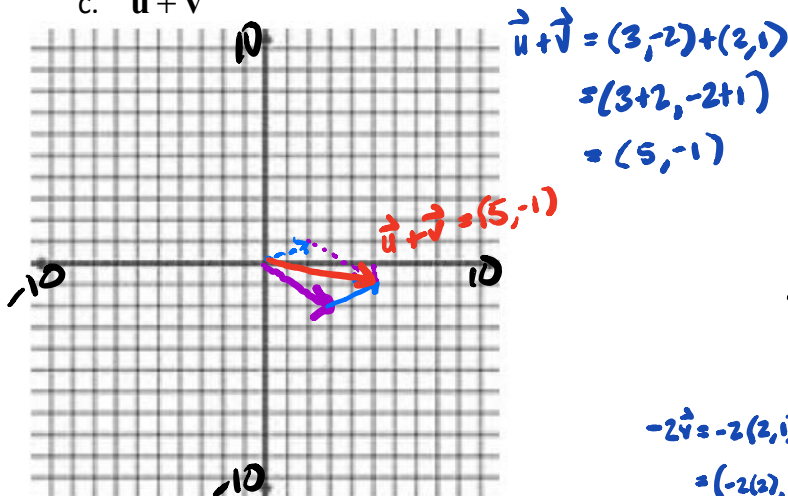
a.  $\vec{u} = (3, -2)$



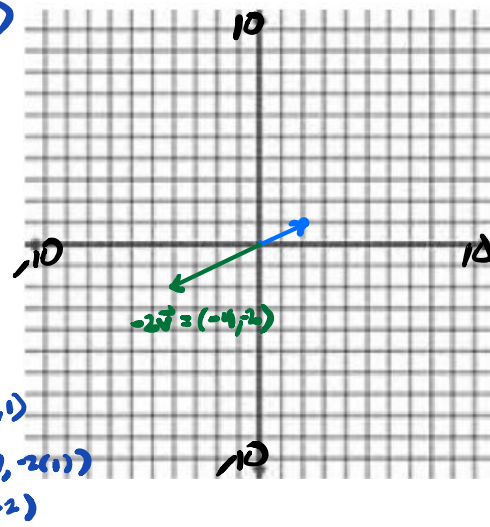
b.  $\vec{v} = (2, 1)$



c.  $\vec{u} + \vec{v}$



d.  $-2\vec{v}$



IMPORTANT VECTOR SPACES

$\mathbb{R}$	= 1-space	= the set of real numbers
$\mathbb{R}^2$	= 2-space	= the set of all ordered pairs of real numbers.
$\mathbb{R}^3$	= 3-space	= the set of all ordered triples of real numbers.
$\mathbb{R}^n$	= n-space	= the set of all ordered n-tuples of real numbers.

DEFINITION OF VECTOR ADDITION AND SCALAR MULTIPLICATION  $[\mathbb{R}^n]$

Let  $\vec{u} = (u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n)$  and  $\vec{v} = (v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n)$  be vectors in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , and let  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ . Then the sum of  $\vec{u}$  and  $\vec{v}$  is defined as the vector  $\vec{u} + \vec{v} = (u_1 + v_1, u_2 + v_2, \dots, u_n + v_n)$  and the scalar multiplication of  $\vec{u}$  by  $c$  is defined as the vector  $c\vec{u} = (cu_1, cu_2, \dots, cu_n)$ .

**THEOREM 1.2: PROPERTIES OF VECTOR ADDITION AND SCALAR MULTIPLICATION IN  $R^n$**

Let  $\mathbf{u}$ ,  $\mathbf{v}$ , and  $\mathbf{w}$  be vectors in  $R^n$ , and let  $c$  and  $d$  be scalars.  
**ADDITION:**

Let  $\vec{u} = (u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n)$ ,  $\vec{v} = (v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n)$ ,  
 $\vec{w} = (w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n)$ ,  $v_i, u_i, w_i, i=1, 2, \dots, n$   
 $\in R$ , and  $c, d \in R$ .

1.  $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$  is a vector in  $R^n$ .

closure

Proof:

2.  $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} = \vec{v} + \vec{u}$

commutative property

Proof:

$\vec{u} + \vec{v} = (u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n) + (v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n)$   
 $= (u_1 + v_1, u_2 + v_2, \dots, u_n + v_n)$  *defn. vector +*  
 $= (v_1 + u_1, v_2 + u_2, \dots, v_n + u_n)$   *$R$  is comm (+)*  
 $= (v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n) + (u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n)$  *defn vect. +*

$\vec{v} + \vec{u} //$

3.  $\mathbf{u} + (\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}) = (\vec{u} + \vec{v}) + \vec{w}$

Associative property

4.  $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{0} = \vec{u}$

additive identity property

5.  $\mathbf{u} + (-\mathbf{u}) = \vec{0}$

additive inverse property

**SCALAR MULTIPLICATION:**

6.  $c\mathbf{u}$  is a vector in  $R^n$ .

closure

7.  $c(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) = c\vec{u} + c\vec{v}$

distributive property

Proof:

$c(\vec{u} + \vec{v}) = c[(u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n) + (v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n)]$   
 $= c(u_1 + v_1, u_2 + v_2, \dots, u_n + v_n)$  *defn vec. +*  
 $= (c(u_1 + v_1), c(u_2 + v_2), \dots, c(u_n + v_n))$  *defn vec. scal. mult.*  
 $= (cu_1 + cv_1, cu_2 + cv_2, \dots, cu_n + cv_n)$   *$R$  distributes*

see page below...

8.  $(c + d)\mathbf{u} = c\vec{u} + d\vec{u}$

distributive property

9.  $c(d\mathbf{u}) = (cd)\vec{u}$

associative property

10.  $1(\mathbf{u}) = \vec{u}$

multiplicative identity property

$$= (cu_1, cu_2, \dots, cu_n) + (cv_1, cv_2, \dots, cv_n) \quad \text{defn of vec. +}$$

$$= c(u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n) + c(v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n) \quad \text{defn of vec. scal. mult}$$

$$= c\vec{u} + c\vec{v} //$$

Example 2: Solve for  $\mathbf{w}$ , where  $\mathbf{u} = (2, -1, 3, 4)$ , and  $\mathbf{v} = (-1, 8, 0, 3)$ .

a.  $\mathbf{w} + \mathbf{u} = -\mathbf{v}$   
 $\vec{w} + \vec{u} - \vec{u} = -\vec{v} - \vec{u}$

$$\vec{w} + \vec{u} + (-\vec{u}) = -1(\vec{v} + \vec{u})$$

$$\vec{w} + \vec{0} = -[(-1, 8, 0, 3) + (2, -1, 3, 4)]$$

$$\vec{w} = -(1, 7, 3, 7)$$

$$\vec{w} = (-1, -7, -3, -7)$$

b.  $\mathbf{w} + 3\mathbf{v} = -2\mathbf{u}$

$$\vec{w} = -2\vec{u} - 3\vec{v}$$

$$\vec{w} = (-4, 2, -6, 8) - (-3, 24, 0, 9)$$

$$\vec{w} = (-1, -22, -6, -17)$$

### DEFINITION OF COLUMN VECTOR ADDITION AND SCALAR MULTIPLICATION

Let  $u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n$ ,  $v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n$ , and  $c$  be scalars.

$$\begin{bmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \\ \vdots \\ u_n \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \\ \vdots \\ v_n \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} u_1 + v_1 \\ u_2 + v_2 \\ \vdots \\ u_n + v_n \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad c \begin{bmatrix} u_1 \\ u_2 \\ \vdots \\ u_n \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} cu_1 \\ cu_2 \\ \vdots \\ cu_n \end{bmatrix}$$

Example 3: Find the following, given that  $\mathbf{u} = \begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ 18 \\ -1 \\ 31 \\ -9 \end{bmatrix}$ , and  $\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 41 \\ -6 \\ -3 \\ 15 \end{bmatrix}$ .

a.  $2\mathbf{u} - 3\mathbf{v}$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} -6 \\ 36 \\ -2 \\ 62 \\ -18 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 6 \\ -123 \\ 18 \\ 9 \\ -45 \end{bmatrix} \Rightarrow \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -87 \\ 16 \\ 71 \\ -63 \end{bmatrix}$$

b.  $-(\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{u})$

$$= - \begin{bmatrix} -5 \\ 59 \\ -7 \\ 28 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ -59 \\ 7 \\ -28 \\ -6 \end{bmatrix}$$

### THEOREM 1.3: PROPERTIES OF ADDITIVE IDENTITY AND ADDITIVE INVERSE

Let  $\mathbf{v}$  be a vector in  $R^n$ , and let  $c$  be a scalar. Then the following properties are true.

1. The additive identity is unique.

Proof:

Suppose  $\exists \vec{u} \in R^n \ni \vec{v} + \vec{u} = \vec{v}$ .

$$(\vec{v} + \vec{u}) + (-\vec{v}) = \vec{v} + (-\vec{v})$$

$$\vec{u} + [\vec{v} + (-\vec{v})] = \vec{0}$$

$$\vec{u} + \vec{0} = \vec{0}$$

$$\vec{u} = \vec{0}$$

$\therefore$  The additive identity is unique.  $\checkmark$

2. The additive inverse is unique.

3.  $0\mathbf{v} = \vec{0}$

4.  $c\vec{0} = \vec{0}$

5. If  $c\mathbf{v} = \vec{0}$ , then  $c = 0$  or  $\vec{v} = \vec{0}$ .

6.  $-(-\mathbf{v}) = \vec{v}$

### LINEAR COMBINATIONS OF VECTORS

An important type of problem in linear algebra involves writing one vector as the sum of scalar multiples of other vectors  $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n$ . The vector  $\vec{x}$ ,

$\vec{x} = c_1\vec{v}_1 + c_2\vec{v}_2 + \dots + c_n\vec{v}_n$  is called a linear combination of the vectors  $\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n$ .

Example 4: If possible, write  $\mathbf{u}$  as a linear combination of  $\mathbf{v}_1$  and  $\mathbf{v}_2$ , where  $\mathbf{v}_1 = (1, 2)$  and  $\mathbf{v}_2 = (-1, 3)$ .

a.  $\mathbf{u} = (0, 3)$

Let's check  $\checkmark$

$$\vec{u} = c_1\vec{v}_1 + c_2\vec{v}_2 \rightarrow (0, 3) = \frac{3}{5}(1, 2) + \frac{3}{5}(-1, 3)$$

b.  $\mathbf{u} = (1, -1)$

see next page

$$\begin{cases} (0, 3) = c_1(1, 2) + c_2(-1, 3) \\ (0, 3) = (c_1, 2c_1) + (-c_2, 3c_2) \\ (0, 3) = (c_1 - c_2, 2c_1 + 3c_2) \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} c_1 - c_2 = 0 &\rightarrow c_1 = c_2 = \frac{3}{5} \\ 2c_1 + 3c_2 = 3 &\rightarrow 2c_2 + 3c_2 = 3 \rightarrow 5c_2 = 3 \rightarrow c_2 = \frac{3}{5} \end{aligned}$$

$$b) \vec{u} = (1, -1), \vec{v}_1 = (1, 2), \vec{v}_2 = (-1, 3)$$

$$c_1 \vec{v}_1 + c_2 \vec{v}_2 = \vec{u}$$

$$c_1(1, 2) + c_2(-1, 3) = (1, -1)$$

$$c_1 - c_2 = 1$$

$$2c_1 + 3c_2 = -1$$

$$B = \left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 2 & 3 & -1 \end{array} \right]$$

$$\downarrow$$

$-2R_1 + R_2 \rightarrow R_2$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 5 & -3 \end{array} \right]$$

$$\downarrow$$

$5R_1 + R_2 \rightarrow R_1$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} 5 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 5 & -3 \end{array} \right]$$

$$\downarrow$$
$$\left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 0 & 2/5 \\ 0 & 1 & -3/5 \end{array} \right]$$

$$c_1 = \frac{2}{5}$$

$$c_2 = -\frac{3}{5}$$

$$\frac{2}{5}(1, 2) - \frac{3}{5}(-1, 3) = (1, -1)$$

$$S = \{ \vec{v}_1, \vec{v}_2 \}$$

If you can obtain any vector in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  using a linear combination of the vectors in  $S$ , the  $S$  is a spanning set of  $\mathbb{R}^2$ .

Example 5: If possible, write  $\mathbf{u}$  as a linear combination of  $\mathbf{v}_1$ ,  $\mathbf{v}_2$ , and  $\mathbf{v}_3$ , where  $\mathbf{v}_1 = (1, 3, 5)$ ,  $\mathbf{v}_2 = (2, -1, 3)$ , and  $\mathbf{v}_3 = (-3, 2, -4)$ .  
 $\mathbf{u} = (-1, 7, 2)$

$$c_1(1, 3, 5) + c_2(2, -1, 3) + c_3(-3, 2, -4) = (-1, 7, 2)$$

$$c_1 + 2c_2 - 3c_3 = -1$$

$$3c_1 - c_2 + 2c_3 = 7$$

$$5c_1 + 3c_2 - 4c_3 = 2$$

inconsistent system

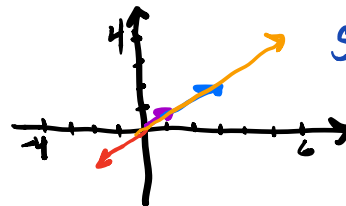
It is not possible to write  $\vec{u}$  as a linear combination of the vectors  $\vec{v}_1, \vec{v}_2, \vec{v}_3$ .

WHAT THE HECK DOES IT ALL MEAN??

Any vector space consists of 4 entities: a set of vectors, a set of scalars, and 2 operations. Currently, we are only exploring the vector spaces in  $\mathbb{R}^n$ .

Let's think about the following subset of  $\mathbb{R}^2$ :

$$S = \left\{ \left( x, \frac{1}{2}x \right) : x \in \mathbb{R} \right\}$$



Is the set  $S$  a vector space? Let's find out!

Let  $\vec{u} = (u_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1)$ ,  $\vec{v} = (v_1, \frac{1}{2}v_1)$ ,  $\vec{w} = (w_1, \frac{1}{2}w_1)$ , and  $u_1, v_1, w_1, c, d \in \mathbb{R}$ .

1. Closure under addition.

$\vec{u}$  and  $\vec{v} \in S$ .

$$\vec{u} + \vec{v} = (u_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1) + (v_1, \frac{1}{2}v_1)$$

$$= (u_1 + v_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1 + \frac{1}{2}v_1) \text{ defn. vect. +}$$

$$= (u_1 + v_1, \frac{1}{2}(u_1 + v_1)) \text{ R is dist.}$$

2. Commutativity under addition.

$$\vec{u} + \vec{v} = (u_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1) + (v_1, \frac{1}{2}v_1)$$

$$= (u_1 + v_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1 + \frac{1}{2}v_1) \text{ defn vect +}$$

$$= (v_1 + u_1, \frac{1}{2}v_1 + \frac{1}{2}u_1) \text{ R is comm.}$$

$$= (v_1, \frac{1}{2}v_1) + (u_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1) \text{ defn vect +}$$

$$= \vec{v} + \vec{u} //$$

3. Associativity under addition.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \vec{u} + (\vec{v} + \vec{w}) &= (u_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1) + \left[ (v_1, \frac{1}{2}v_1) + (w_1, \frac{1}{2}w_1) \right] \\
 &= (u_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1) + (v_1 + w_1, \frac{1}{2}v_1 + \frac{1}{2}w_1) \text{ - defn vect +} \\
 &= (u_1 + (v_1 + w_1), \frac{1}{2}u_1 + (\frac{1}{2}v_1 + \frac{1}{2}w_1)) \\
 &= ((u_1 + v_1) + w_1, (\frac{1}{2}u_1 + \frac{1}{2}v_1) + \frac{1}{2}w_1) \text{ } \mathbb{R} \text{ is assoc (+)} \\
 &= (u_1 + v_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1 + \frac{1}{2}v_1) + (w_1, \frac{1}{2}w_1) \text{ } \text{defn vect +} \\
 &= \left[ (u_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1) + (v_1, \frac{1}{2}v_1) \right] + \vec{w} \rightarrow = (\vec{u} + \vec{v}) + \vec{w} //
 \end{aligned}$$

4. Additive identity.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \vec{u} + \vec{0} &= (u_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1) + (0, \frac{1}{2} \cdot 0) \\
 &= (u_1 + 0, \frac{1}{2}u_1 + 0) \text{ defn vect +} \\
 &= (u_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1) \text{ add. identity prop for } \mathbb{R} \\
 &= \vec{u} //
 \end{aligned}$$

5. Additive inverse.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \vec{u} + (-\vec{u}) &= (u_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1) + [-(u_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1)] \\
 &= (u_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1) + (-u_1, -(\frac{1}{2}u_1)) \text{ } \text{defn}^{\text{vect.}} \text{ scal. mult.} \\
 &= (u_1 + (-u_1), \frac{1}{2}u_1 + (-\frac{1}{2}u_1)) \text{ defn vect. +} \\
 &= (0, \frac{1}{2}(u_1 + (-u_1))) \\
 &= (0, \frac{1}{2} \cdot 0) \rightarrow = \vec{0}
 \end{aligned}$$

*add. inv. prop. for  $\mathbb{R}$*

6. Closure under scalar multiplication.

$$\begin{aligned}
 c\vec{u} &= c(u_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1) \\
 &= (cu_1, c(\frac{1}{2}u_1)) \text{ defn vect. scal. mult.} \\
 &= (cu_1, \frac{1}{2}(cu_1)) \text{ } \mathbb{R} \text{ is comm (x)} \\
 &\text{which } \in S //
 \end{aligned}$$



7. Distributivity under scalar multiplication (2 vectors and 1 scalar).

$$\begin{aligned}c(\vec{u} + \vec{v}) &= c\left[\left(u_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1\right) + \left(v_1, \frac{1}{2}v_1\right)\right] \\&= c\left(u_1 + v_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1 + \frac{1}{2}v_1\right) \text{ defn vect. +} \\&= \left(c(u_1 + v_1), c\left(\frac{1}{2}u_1 + \frac{1}{2}v_1\right)\right) \text{ defn vect scal. mult.} \\&= \left(cu_1 + cv_1, c\left(\frac{1}{2}u_1\right) + c\left(\frac{1}{2}v_1\right)\right) \text{ R is dist.} \\&= \left(cu_1, c\left(\frac{1}{2}u_1\right)\right) + \left(cv_1, c\left(\frac{1}{2}v_1\right)\right) \text{ defn vect +} \\&= c\left(u_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1\right) + c\left(v_1, \frac{1}{2}v_1\right) \text{ defn vect. scal. mult} \\&= c\vec{u} + c\vec{v} \quad //\end{aligned}$$

8. Distributivity under scalar multiplication (2 scalars and 1 vector).

$$\begin{aligned}(c+d)\vec{u} &= (c+d)\left(u_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1\right) \\&= \left((c+d)u_1, (c+d)\left(\frac{1}{2}u_1\right)\right) \text{ defn vect scal. mult} \\&= \left(cu_1 + du_1, c\left(\frac{1}{2}u_1\right) + d\left(\frac{1}{2}u_1\right)\right) \text{ R is dist.} \\&= \left(cu_1, c\left(\frac{1}{2}u_1\right)\right) + \left(du_1, d\left(\frac{1}{2}u_1\right)\right) \text{ defn. vect +} \\&= c\left(u_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1\right) + d\left(u_1, \frac{1}{2}u_1\right) \text{ defn. vect. scal. mult.} \\&= c\vec{u} + d\vec{u} \quad //\end{aligned}$$

9. Associativity under scalar multiplication.

$$\begin{aligned}c(d\vec{u}) &= c\left[d(u_1, \tfrac{1}{2}u_1)\right] \\&= c\left(du_1, d\left(\tfrac{1}{2}u_1\right)\right) \leftarrow \text{defn vect. scal. mult.} \\&= \left(c(du_1), c\left[d\left(\tfrac{1}{2}u_1\right)\right]\right) \\&= \left((cd)u_1, (cd)\left(\tfrac{1}{2}u_1\right)\right) \text{ } R \text{ is assoc } (x) \\&= (cd)\left(u_1, \tfrac{1}{2}u_1\right) \text{ defn vector scal. mult.} \\&= (cd)\vec{u} \quad \parallel\end{aligned}$$

10. Scalar multiplicative identity.

$$\begin{aligned}1\vec{u} &= 1(u_1, \tfrac{1}{2}u_1) \\&= \left(1(u_1), 1\left(\tfrac{1}{2}u_1\right)\right) \text{ defn } \overset{\text{vect.}}{\text{scal. mult}} \\&= \left(u_1, \left(1 \cdot \tfrac{1}{2}\right)u_1\right) \leftarrow R \text{ is associative} \\&= \left(u_1, \tfrac{1}{2}u_1\right) \leftarrow 1 \text{ is the mult. identity for } R \\&= \vec{u} \quad \parallel\end{aligned}$$

Conclusion?

$$S = \left\{ (x, \tfrac{1}{2}x) : x \in \mathbb{R} \right\} \text{ is a vector space } \parallel$$

Example 6: Determine whether the set  $W$  is a vector space with the standard operations. Justify your answer.

$$W = \{(x_1, x_2, 4) : x_1 \text{ and } x_2 \in \mathbb{R}\}$$

$$\vec{u} = (1, 2, 4) \text{ and } \vec{v} = (5, 6, 4) \in W$$

$\vec{u} + \vec{v} = (6, 8, 8) \notin W$  so  $W$  is not closed under addition. So... NOT a vector space.

## SUBSPACES

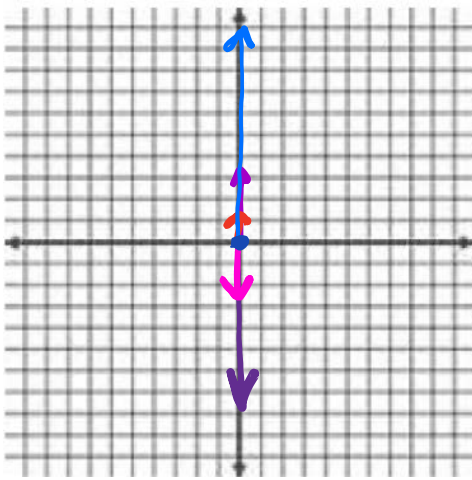
In many applications of linear algebra, vector spaces occur as a subspace of larger spaces. A

nonempty subset of a vector space is a subspace when it is a vector

space with the same operations defined in the original vector space.

Consider the following:  $W = \{(0, y)\}$  and  $V = \mathbb{R}^2$ .

$$W = \{(0, y) : y \in \mathbb{R}\}$$



$$W \subseteq \mathbb{R}^2,$$

subset

$W$  is nonempty

$$\vec{u} = (0, u_1), \vec{v} = (0, v_1), c, u_1, v_1 \in \mathbb{R}.$$

$$\vec{u} + \vec{v} = (0, u_1) + (0, v_1)$$

$$= (0, u_1 + v_1) \in W, \text{ so we have closure under addition.}$$

$$c\vec{u} = c(0, u_1)$$

$$= (c(0), c(u_1))$$

$$= (0, cu_1) \in W, \text{ so we have closure under scal. mult.}$$

$\therefore W$  is a subspace of  $\mathbb{R}^2$ .

## DEFINITION OF A SUBSPACE OF A VECTOR SPACE

A nonempty subset  $W$  of a vector space  $V$  is called a subspace of  $V$  when  $W$  is a vector space under the operations of addition and scalar multiplication defined in  $V$ .

### THEOREM 1.4: TEST FOR A SUBSPACE

If  $W$  is a nonempty subset of a vector space  $V$ , then  $W$  is a subspace of  $V$  if and only if the following closure conditions hold.

1. If  $\mathbf{u}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  are in  $W$ , then  $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$  is in  $W$ .
2. If  $\mathbf{u}$  is in  $W$  and  $c$  is any scalar, then  $c\mathbf{u}$  is in  $W$ .

Example 7: Verify that  $W$  is a subspace of  $V$ .

$$W = \{(x, y, 2x - 3y) : x \text{ and } y \in \mathbb{R}\}$$

$$V = \mathbb{R}^3$$

$$1) W \subseteq \mathbb{R}^3 \checkmark$$

2)  $W$  is non-empty

$$\text{Let } \vec{u} = (u_1, u_2, 2u_1 - 3u_2), \vec{v} = (v_1, v_2, 2v_1 - 3v_2), u_1, u_2, v_1, v_2, c \in \mathbb{R}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 3) \vec{u} + \vec{v} &= (u_1, u_2, 2u_1 - 3u_2) + (v_1, v_2, 2v_1 - 3v_2) \\ &= (u_1 + v_1, u_2 + v_2, (2u_1 - 3u_2) + (2v_1 - 3v_2)) \\ &= (u_1 + v_1, u_2 + v_2, 2u_1 + 2v_1 + (-3u_2 - 3v_2)) \\ &= (u_1 + v_1, u_2 + v_2, 2(u_1 + v_1) - 3(u_2 + v_2)) \in W \checkmark \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 4) c\vec{u} &= c(u_1, u_2, 2u_1 - 3u_2) \\ &= (cu_1, cu_2, c(2u_1 - 3u_2)) \\ &= (cu_1, cu_2, c(2u_1) - c(3u_2)) \end{aligned} \quad \rightarrow \quad = (cu_1, cu_2, 2(cu_1) - 3(cu_2)) \in W \checkmark$$

### THEOREM 1.5: THE INTERSECTION OF TWO SUBSPACES IS A SUBSPACE

If  $V$  and  $W$  are both subspaces of a vector space  $U$ , then the intersection of  $V$  and  $W$ , denoted by

$V \cap W$ , is also a subspace of  $U$ .

## 1.4 Basis and Dimension of $R^n$

### Learning Objectives

1. Determine if a set of vectors in  $R^n$  spans  $R^n$ .
2. Determine if a set of vectors in  $R^n$  is linearly independent
3. Determine if a set of vectors in  $R^n$  is a basis for  $R^n$
4. Find standard bases for  $R^n$
5. Determine the dimension of  $R^n$

Let's do our math stretches!

If possible, write the vector  $\mathbf{z} = (-4, -3, 3)$  as a linear combination of the vectors in  $S = \{(\overset{\vec{v}_1}{1}, \overset{\vec{v}_2}{2}, -2), (2, -1, 1)\}$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\vec{z} &= c_1 \vec{v}_1 + c_2 \vec{v}_2 \\ (-4, -3, 3) &= c_1(1, 2, -2) + c_2(2, -1, 1) \\ -4 &= c_1 + 2c_2 \\ -3 &= 2c_1 - c_2 \\ 3 &= -2c_1 + c_2\end{aligned}$$
$$\left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 2 & -4 \\ 2 & -1 & -3 \\ -2 & 1 & 3 \end{array} \right] \rightarrow \left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 0 & -2 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

What if...

$$S = \left\{ (1, 2, -2), (2, -1, 1), (-4, -3, 3) \right\}$$

### DEFINITION OF LINEAR COMBINATION OF VECTORS IN A VECTOR SPACE

A vector  $\mathbf{v}$  in a vector space  $V$  is called a linear combination of the vectors  $\mathbf{u}_1, \mathbf{u}_2, \dots, \mathbf{u}_k$  in  $V$

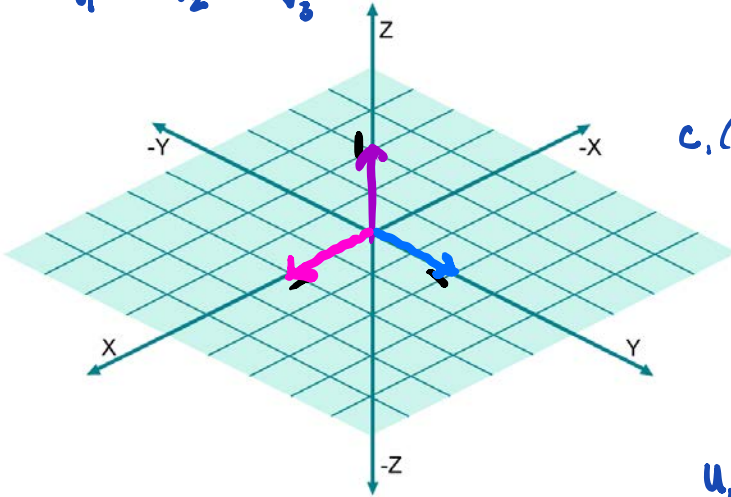
when  $\mathbf{v}$  can be written in the form  $\vec{v} = c_1 \vec{u}_1 + c_2 \vec{u}_2 + \dots + c_k \vec{u}_k$

where  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k$  are scalars,  $\in \mathbb{R}$

## DEFINITION OF A SPANNING SET OF A VECTOR SPACE

Let  $S = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$  be a subset of a vector space  $V$ . The set  $S$  is called a spanning set of  $V$  when every vector in  $V$  can be written as a linear combination of vectors in  $S$ .

$$S = \{ \underbrace{(1,0,0)}_{\vec{v}_1}, \underbrace{(0,1,0)}_{\vec{v}_2}, \underbrace{(0,0,1)}_{\vec{v}_3} \}, V = \mathbb{R}^3$$



Let  $\vec{u} = (u_1, u_2, u_3)$  be any vector in  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . So  $u_1, u_2, u_3 \in \mathbb{R}$ .

$$c_1 \vec{v}_1 + c_2 \vec{v}_2 + c_3 \vec{v}_3 = \vec{u}$$

$$c_1(1,0,0) + c_2(0,1,0) + c_3(0,0,1) = (u_1, u_2, u_3)$$

$$c_1 = u_1$$

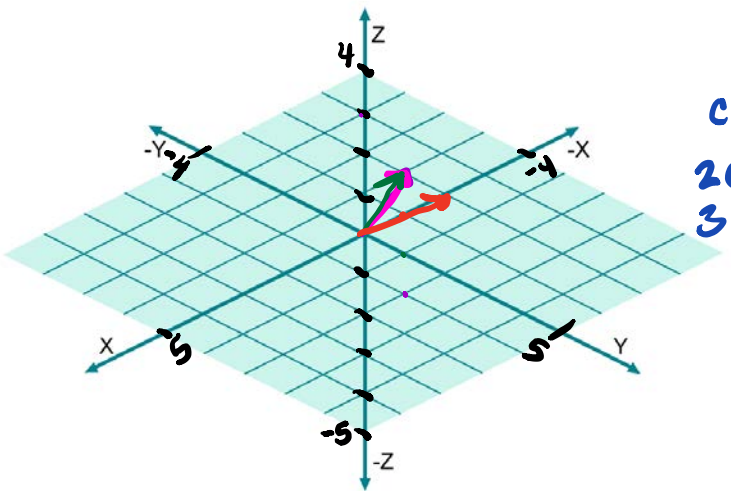
$$c_2 = u_2$$

$$c_3 = u_3$$

$$u_1(1,0,0) + u_2(0,1,0) + u_3(0,0,1) = (u_1, u_2, u_3)$$

So  $S$  spans  $\mathbb{R}^3$ .

$$S = \{ \underbrace{(1,2,3)}_{\vec{v}_1}, \underbrace{(0,1,2)}_{\vec{v}_2}, \underbrace{(-1,1,1)}_{\vec{v}_3} \}, V = \mathbb{R}^3$$



Let  $\vec{u} = (u_1, u_2, u_3) \ni u_i, i=1,2,3 \in \mathbb{R}$

$$c_1 \vec{v}_1 + c_2 \vec{v}_2 + c_3 \vec{v}_3 = \vec{u}$$

$$c_1(1,2,3) + c_2(0,1,2) + c_3(-1,1,1) = (u_1, u_2, u_3)$$

$$c_1 - c_3 = u_1$$

$$2c_1 + c_2 + c_3 = u_2$$

$$3c_1 + 2c_2 + c_3 = u_3$$

$S$  is a spanning set of  $\mathbb{R}^3$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & -1 & u_1 \\ 2 & 1 & 1 & u_2 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 & u_3 \end{array} \right]$$

$$2R_1 + R_2 \rightarrow R_2$$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & -1 & u_1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & -2u_1 + u_2 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 & u_3 \end{array} \right]$$

$$-3R_1 + R_3 \rightarrow R_3$$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & -1 & u_1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & -2u_1 + u_2 \\ 0 & 2 & 4 & -3u_1 + u_3 \end{array} \right]$$

$$-2R_2 + R_3 \rightarrow R_3$$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & -1 & u_1 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & -2u_1 + u_2 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 & u_1 - 2u_2 + u_3 \end{array} \right]$$

$$3R_3 + 2R_2 \rightarrow R_2$$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & -1 & u_1 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 & -u_1 - 4u_2 + 3u_3 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 & u_1 - 2u_2 + u_3 \end{array} \right]$$

$$-2R_1 + R_3 \rightarrow R_1$$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} -2 & 0 & 0 & -u_1 - 2u_2 + u_3 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 & -u_1 - 4u_2 + 3u_3 \\ 0 & 0 & -2 & u_1 - 2u_2 + u_3 \end{array} \right]$$

↓

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & -\frac{1}{2}(-u_1 - 2u_2 + u_3) \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \frac{1}{2}(-u_1 - 4u_2 + 3u_3) \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -\frac{1}{2}(u_1 - 2u_2 + u_3) \end{array} \right]$$

Tired brain...

$$\frac{\begin{matrix} 4u_1 - 2u_2 \\ -3u_1 + u_3 \end{matrix}}{u_1 - 2u_2 + u_3}$$

$$3u_1 - 6u_2 + 3u_3$$

$$-4u_1 + 2u_2$$

$$\text{Let } \vec{u} = (1, 1, 1)$$

$$c_1 = -\frac{1}{2}(-u_1 - 2u_2 + u_3) = 1$$

$$c_2 = \frac{1}{2}(-u_1 - 4u_2 + 3u_3) = -1$$

$$c_3 = -\frac{1}{2}(u_1 - 2u_2 + u_3) = 0$$

$$c_1(1, 2, 3) + c_2(0, 1, 2) + c_3(-1, 1, 1) = \vec{u}$$

$$1(1, 2, 3) + (-1)(0, 1, 2) + 0(-1, 1, 1) = (1, 1, 1) \checkmark$$

$$\text{Let } \vec{u} = (-1, 1, 2)$$

$$c_1 = -\frac{1}{2}, c_2 = \frac{3}{2}, c_3 = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$-\frac{1}{2}(1, 2, 3) + \frac{3}{2}(0, 1, 2) + \frac{1}{2}(-1, 1, 1) = (-1, 1, 2) \checkmark$$

## DEFINITION OF THE SPAN OF A SET

If  $S = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$  is a set of vectors in a vector space  $V$ , then the Span of  $S$  is the set of all

linear combinations of the vectors in  $S$ .

$$\text{Span}(S) = \{c_1\vec{v}_1 + c_2\vec{v}_2 + \dots + c_k\vec{v}_k : c_1, c_2, \dots, c_k \in \mathbb{R}\}$$

The span of  $S$  is denoted by

$$\text{span}(S) \text{ or } \text{span}\{\vec{v}_1, \vec{v}_2, \dots, \vec{v}_k\}$$

When  $\text{span}(S) = V$  it is said that  $V$  is spanned by  $S = \{\vec{v}_1, \vec{v}_2, \dots, \vec{v}_k\}$  or that  $S$  spans  $V$ .

## THEOREM 1.6: Span(S) IS A SUBSPACE OF V

If  $S = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$  is a set of a vectors in a vector space  $V$ , then  $\text{span}(S)$  is a subspace of  $V$ . Moreover,

$\text{span}(S)$  is the smallest subspace of  $V$  that contains  $S$ , in the sense that every other subspace of  $V$  that contains  $S$  must contain  $\text{span}(S)$ .

Proof:

Let  $\vec{u} = c_1\vec{v}_1 + c_2\vec{v}_2 + \dots + c_k\vec{v}_k$ ,  $\vec{w} = d_1\vec{v}_1 + d_2\vec{v}_2 + \dots + d_k\vec{v}_k \in \text{span}(S)$ , where  $c_i, d_i$  for  $i = 1, 2, \dots, k \in \mathbb{R}$ , and  $b \in \mathbb{R}$ .

$\text{span}(S)$  is a nonempty subset of  $V$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \vec{u} &= c_1\vec{v}_1 + c_2\vec{v}_2 + \dots + c_k\vec{v}_k \\ + \vec{w} &= d_1\vec{v}_1 + d_2\vec{v}_2 + \dots + d_k\vec{v}_k \end{aligned}$$

$$\vec{u} + \vec{w} = (c_1 + d_1)\vec{v}_1 + (c_2 + d_2)\vec{v}_2 + \dots + (c_k + d_k)\vec{v}_k \in \text{span}(S) \checkmark$$

$$b\vec{u} = b(c_1\vec{v}_1 + c_2\vec{v}_2 + \dots + c_k\vec{v}_k)$$

$$b\vec{u} = (b(c_1\vec{v}_1) + b(c_2\vec{v}_2) + \dots + b(c_k\vec{v}_k))$$

$$b\vec{u} = (bc_1)\vec{v}_1 + (bc_2)\vec{v}_2 + \dots + (bc_k)\vec{v}_k \in \text{span}(S) \checkmark$$



Example 3: Determine whether the set  $S$  spans  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . If the set does not span  $\mathbb{R}^2$ , then give a geometric description of the subspace that it does span.

a.  $S = \{(1, -1), (2, 1)\} = \{\vec{v}_1, \vec{v}_2\}$

Let  $\vec{u} = (u_1, u_2)$  be any vector in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ ,  $u_1$  and  $u_2 \in \mathbb{R}$ .

$$c_1 \vec{v}_1 + c_2 \vec{v}_2 = \vec{u}$$

$$c_1(1, -1) + c_2(2, 1) = (u_1, u_2)$$

$$c_1 + 2c_2 = u_1$$

$$-c_1 + c_2 = u_2$$

$$3c_2 = u_1 + u_2$$

$$c_2 = \frac{1}{3}(u_1 + u_2)$$

$$-c_1 + \frac{1}{3}(u_1 + u_2) = u_2$$

$$-c_1 + \frac{1}{3}u_1 + \frac{1}{3}u_2 = u_2$$

$$-c_1 = -\frac{1}{3}u_1 + \frac{2}{3}u_2$$

$$c_1 = \frac{1}{3}(u_1 - 2u_2)$$

$S$  spans  $\mathbb{R}^2$   
 $\text{Span}(S) = \mathbb{R}^2$

Check:

$$\frac{1}{3}(u_1 - 2u_2)(1, -1) + \frac{1}{3}(u_1 + u_2)(2, 1) \stackrel{?}{=} (u_1, u_2)$$

$$(u_1, u_2) = (u_1, u_2) \text{ yep!}$$

b.  $S = \{(1, 2), (-2, -4), (\frac{1}{2}, 1)\}$

$$c_1(1, 2) + c_2(-2, -4) + c_3(\frac{1}{2}, 1) = (u_1, u_2)$$

$$c_1 - 2c_2 + \frac{1}{2}c_3 = u_1$$

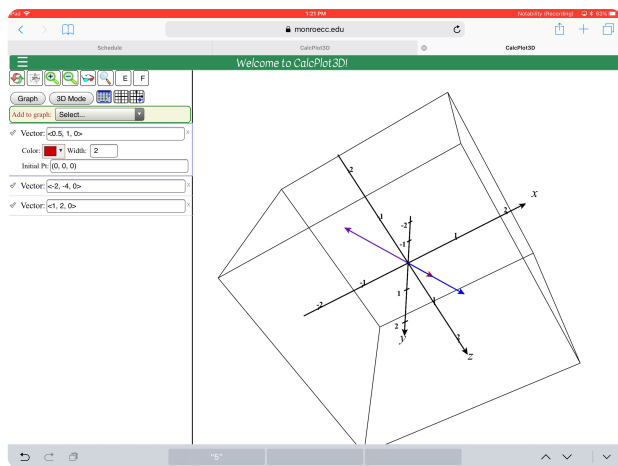
$$2c_1 - 4c_2 + c_3 = u_2$$

$$-2c_1 + 4c_2 - c_3 = -2u_1$$

$$2c_1 - 4c_2 + c_3 = u_2$$

$$0 = u_2 - 2u_1$$

$$u_1 = \frac{1}{2}u_2$$



$S$  does not span  $\mathbb{R}^2$ .  $S$  spans the line  $y = 2x$ .

c.  $S = \{(-1, 2), (2, -1), (1, 1)\}$  let  $\vec{u} = (u_1, u_2)$  be any vector in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ .

$$c_1 \vec{v}_1 + c_2 \vec{v}_2 + c_3 \vec{v}_3 = \vec{u}$$

$$c_1(-1, 2) + c_2(2, -1) + c_3(1, 1) = (u_1, u_2)$$

$$-c_1 + 2c_2 + c_3 = u_1$$

$$2c_1 - c_2 + c_3 = u_2$$

$$-2c_1 + 4c_2 + 2c_3 = 2u_1$$

$$2c_1 - c_2 + c_3 = u_2$$

$$3c_2 + 3c_3 = 2u_1 + u_2$$

$$c_3 = \frac{1}{3}(2u_1 + u_2 - 3c_2)$$

$$-c_1 + 2c_2 + \frac{1}{3}(2u_1 + u_2 - 3c_2) = u_1$$

$$-c_1 + 2c_2 + \frac{2}{3}u_1 + \frac{1}{3}u_2 - c_2 = u_1$$

$$-c_1 + c_2 = \frac{1}{3}u_1 - \frac{1}{3}u_2$$

$$c_1 = c_2 - \frac{1}{3}u_1 + \frac{1}{3}u_2$$

see next page

#### DEFINITION OF LINEAR DEPENDENCE AND LINEAR INDEPENDENCE

A set of vectors  $S = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$  in a vector space  $V$  is called linearly independent when the vector equation

$$c_1 \vec{v}_1 + c_2 \vec{v}_2 + \dots + c_k \vec{v}_k = \vec{0}$$

has only the trivial solution

$$c_1 = c_2 = \dots = c_k = 0$$

If there are also nontrivial solutions, then  $S$  is called linearly dependent.

$$2(c_2 - \frac{1}{3}u_1 + \frac{1}{3}u_2) - c_2 + c_3 = u_2$$

$$\underbrace{c_2} - \frac{2}{3}u_1 + \frac{2}{3}u_2 + \underbrace{c_3} = u_2$$

CRAP!!

$$c_2 + \frac{1}{3}(2u_1 + u_2 - 3c_2) = \frac{2}{3}u_1$$

redo in matrix:

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} -1 & 2 & 1 & u_1 \\ 2 & -1 & 1 & u_2 \end{array} \right]$$

$2R_1 + R_2 \rightarrow R_2$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} -1 & \textcircled{2} & \textcircled{1} & u_1 \\ 0 & 3 & 3 & 2u_1 + u_2 \end{array} \right]$$

$$-c_1 + 2c_2 + c_3 = u_1$$

$$c_2 + c_3 = \frac{1}{3}(2u_1 + u_2)$$

Let  $c_3 = 0$ ,

$$-c_1 + 2c_2 = u_1$$

$$c_2 = \frac{2}{3}u_1 + \frac{1}{3}u_2$$

$$-c_1 + 2(\frac{2}{3}u_1 + \frac{1}{3}u_2) = u_1$$

$$-c_1 + \frac{4}{3}u_1 + \frac{2}{3}u_2 = u_1$$

$$c_1 = \frac{1}{3}u_1 + \frac{2}{3}u_2$$

with  $c_3 = 0$ :

$$c_1(-1, 2) + c_2(2, -1) = (u_1, u_2)$$

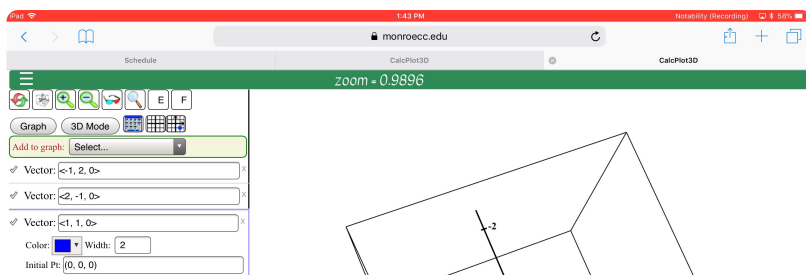
$$\frac{1}{3}(u_1 + 2u_2)(-1, 2) +$$

$$\frac{1}{3}(2u_1 + u_2)(2, -1) = (u_1, u_2)$$

Abstract as heck!

Let  $\vec{u} = (1, 2)$ :

$$\left(-\frac{5}{3}, \frac{10}{3}\right) + \left(\frac{8}{3}, -\frac{4}{3}\right) = (1, 2)$$



zeroed this one out

**S spans  $\mathbb{R}^2$ .**

## TESTING FOR LINEAR INDEPENDENCE AND LINEAR DEPENDENCE

Let  $S = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\}$  be a set of vectors in a vector space  $V$ . To determine whether  $S$  is linearly independent or linearly dependent, use the following steps.

- From the vector equation  $c_1\vec{v}_1 + c_2\vec{v}_2 + \dots + c_k\vec{v}_k = \vec{0}$ , write a system of linear equations in the variables  $c_1, c_2, \dots$ , and  $c_k$ .
- Use Gaussian elimination to determine whether the system has a unique solution.
- If the system has only the trivial solution,  $c_1 = 0, c_2 = 0, \dots, c_k = 0$ , then the set  $S$  is linearly independent. If the system has nontrivial solutions, then  $S$  is linearly dependent.

Example 4: Determine whether the set  $S$  is linearly independent or linearly dependent.

a.  $S = \{ \underset{\vec{v}_1}{(3, -6)}, \underset{\vec{v}_2}{(-1, 2)} \}$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} 3 & -1 & 0 \\ -6 & 2 & 0 \end{array} \right] \rightarrow \left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} 3 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

$$c_1\vec{v}_1 + c_2\vec{v}_2 = \vec{0}$$

$$c_1(3, -6) + c_2(-1, 2) = (0, 0)$$

$$3c_1 = c_2$$

$$\begin{aligned} 6c_1 - 2c_2 &= 0 \\ \rightarrow 3c_1 - c_2 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} -6c_1 + 2c_2 &= 0 \\ \underline{\quad\quad\quad} & \\ 0 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

$c_1(3, -6) + 3c_1(-1, 2) = (0, 0)$   
 $S$  is linearly dependent since  $\exists$  solutions other than  $c_1 = c_2 = 0$ .

b.  $S = \{ \underset{\vec{v}_1}{(6, 2, 1)}, \underset{\vec{v}_2}{(-1, 3, 2)} \}$

$$c_1\vec{v}_1 + c_2\vec{v}_2 = \vec{0}$$

$$c_1(6, 2, 1) + c_2(-1, 3, 2) = (0, 0, 0)$$

$$6c_1 - c_2 = 0$$

$$2c_1 + 3c_2 = 0$$

$$c_1 + 2c_2 = 0$$

$$\rightarrow \left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} 6 & -1 & 0 \\ 2 & 3 & 0 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

$$\text{or } \left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} 6 & -1 & 0 \\ 3 & 5 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

$$\text{or } \left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} 6 & -1 & 0 \\ 3 & 5 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

$$\downarrow \left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

$$\downarrow \left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right] \rightarrow c_1 = c_2 = 0 \text{ so } \downarrow$$

only solution  $\rightarrow 0(6,2,1) + 0(-1,3,2) = (0,0,0)$   
 so  $S$  is linearly independent.

c.  $S = \{ \underset{\vec{v}_1}{(0,0,0,1)}, \underset{\vec{v}_2}{(0,0,1,1)}, \underset{\vec{v}_3}{(0,1,1,1)}, \underset{\vec{v}_4}{(1,1,1,1)} \}$

$$c_1(0,0,0,1) + c_2(0,0,1,1) + c_3(0,1,1,1) + c_4(1,1,1,1) = (0,0,0,0)$$

$$c_4 = 0$$

$$c_3 + c_4 = 0$$

$$c_2 + c_3 + c_4 = 0$$

$$c_1 + c_2 + c_3 + c_4 = 0$$

$c_1 = c_2 = c_3 = c_4 = 0$  so  $S$  is linearly independent

**THEOREM 1.7: A PROPERTY OF LINEARLY DEPENDENT SETS**

A set  $S = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_k\}$ ,  $k \geq 2$ , is linearly dependent if and only if at least one of the vectors  $v_j$  can be written as a linear combination of the other vectors in  $S$ .

Proof:

1) Suppose  $S$  is linearly dependent. Then  $\exists$  scalars, not all zero,  $\Rightarrow c_1\vec{v}_1 + c_2\vec{v}_2 + \dots + c_k\vec{v}_k = \vec{0}$ . Let  $c_1 \neq 0$ .

Then we have  $c_1\vec{v}_1 = -c_2\vec{v}_2 - c_3\vec{v}_3 - \dots - c_k\vec{v}_k$

$$\vec{v}_1 = -\frac{c_2}{c_1}\vec{v}_2 - \frac{c_3}{c_1}\vec{v}_3 - \dots - \frac{c_k}{c_1}\vec{v}_k //$$

2) Suppose  $\vec{v}_1 = c_2\vec{v}_2 + c_3\vec{v}_3 + \dots + c_k\vec{v}_k$   
 $\vec{0} = -\vec{v}_1 + c_2\vec{v}_2 + c_3\vec{v}_3 + \dots + c_k\vec{v}_k$

The coefficient to  $\vec{v}_1$  is  $-1 \neq 0$ .  $\therefore S$  is linearly dependent. //

### THEOREM 1.7: COROLLARY

Two vectors  $u$  and  $v$  in a vector space  $V$  are linearly dependent if and only if one is a scalar multiple of the other.

Example 5: Show that the set is linearly dependent by finding a nontrivial linear combination of vectors in the set whose sum is the zero vector. Then express one of the vectors in the set as a linear combination of the other vectors in the set.

$$S = \{(2,4), (-1,-2), (0,6)\}$$

$$c_1(2,4) + c_2(-1,-2) + c_3(0,6) = (0,0)$$

$$\begin{matrix} -2(-1,-2) + 0(0,6) = (2,4) \\ \uparrow \qquad \qquad \qquad \uparrow \\ c_1 \qquad \qquad \qquad c_2 \end{matrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 2c_1 - c_2 &= 0 \\ 4c_1 - 2c_2 + 6c_3 &= 0 \\ [2 \ -1 \ 0 \ | \ 0] &\xrightarrow{-2R_1+R_2} [2 \ -1 \ 0 \ | \ 0] \\ [4 \ -2 \ 6 \ | \ 0] &\xrightarrow{2c_1 - c_2 = 0 \rightarrow c_2 = 2c_1} \end{aligned}$$

nontrivial solutions  $c_3 = 0$

$$c_1(2,4) + c_2(-1,-2) = (0,6)$$

$$2c_1 - c_2 = 0$$

$$4c_1 - 2c_2 = 6$$

$$\rightarrow \left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} 2 & -1 & 0 \\ 4 & -2 & 6 \end{array} \right]$$

$\frac{1}{2}R_2$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} 2 & -1 & 0 \\ 2 & -1 & 3 \end{array} \right]$$

contradiction

$$c_1(-1,-2) + c_2(0,6) = (2,4)$$

$$-c_1 = 2 \rightarrow c_1 = -2$$

$$-2c_1 + 6c_2 = 4$$

$$\rightarrow +4 + 6c_2 = 4 \rightarrow c_2 = 0$$

$$-2(-1,-2) + 0(0,6) = (2,4)$$

$$c_1 = 1, c_2 = 2, c_3 = 0$$

$$1(2,4) + 2(-1,-2) + 0(0,6) = (0,0)$$

### DEFINITION OF BASIS

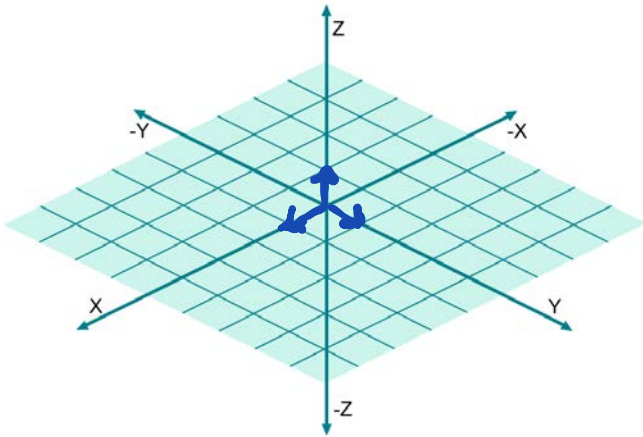
A set of vectors  $S = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  in a vector space  $V$  is called a basis for  $V$  when the following conditions are true.

1.  $S$  spans  $V$ .

2.  $S$  is linearly independent.

The Standard Basis for  $R^3$

$$S = \{(1, 0, 0), (0, 1, 0), (0, 0, 1)\}$$



Example 6: Write the standard basis for the vector space.

a.  $R^2$   $S = \{(1, 0), (0, 1)\}$

b.  $R^5$   $S = \{(1, 0, 0, 0, 0), (0, 1, 0, 0, 0), (0, 0, 1, 0, 0), (0, 0, 0, 0, 1)\}$

c.  $R^n$   $S = \{(1, 0, 0, \dots, 0), (0, 1, 0, \dots, 0), \dots, (0, 0, 0, \dots, 0, 1, 0), (0, 0, \dots, 0, 0, 1)\}$   
n vectors

Example 7: Determine whether  $S$  is a basis for the indicated vector space.

$$S = \{(2,1,0), (0,-1,1)\} \text{ for } \mathbb{R}^3$$

Let  $u = (u_1, u_2, u_3)$  be any vector in  $\mathbb{R}^3$ .

$$c_1(2,1,0) + c_2(0,-1,1) = (u_1, u_2, u_3)$$

$$2c_1 = u_1 \rightarrow c_1 = \frac{1}{2}u_1$$

$$c_1 - c_2 = u_2 \rightarrow c_2 = c_1 + u_2$$

$$c_2 = u_3$$

$$\frac{1}{2}u_1(2,1,0) + u_3(0,-1,1) = (u_1, u_2, u_3)$$

Let's check the system:

$$\text{Let } u = (1, 2, 3)$$

$$\frac{1}{2} \cdot 1(2,1,0) + 3(0,-1,1) \stackrel{?}{=} (1, 2, 3)$$

$$(1, \frac{1}{2}, 0) + (0, -3, 3) \stackrel{?}{=} (1, 2, 3)$$

$(1, -\frac{5}{2}, 3) \neq (1, 2, 3)$   
 $S$  is not a basis for  $\mathbb{R}^3$  since  $S$  doesn't span  $\mathbb{R}^3$ .

THEOREM 1.8: UNIQUENESS OF BASIS REPRESENTATION

If  $S = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  is a basis for a vector space  $V$ , then every vector in  $V$  can be written in one and only one way as a linear combination of vectors in  $S$ .

Proof:

~~Since  $S$  is a basis for  $V$ ,  $S$  is linearly independent  
 $c_1\vec{v}_1 + c_2\vec{v}_2 + \dots + c_n\vec{v}_n = \vec{0}$  implies that  
 $c_1 = c_2 = \dots = c_n = 0$ . So the only way to write  
 combination  
 $c_1\vec{v}_1 = -c_2\vec{v}_2 - c_3\vec{v}_3 - \dots - c_n\vec{v}_n$ . Since  $S$   
 is lin. ind. we know that  $c_1 = 0$ , so we can't  
 mult. both sides by  $\frac{1}{c_1}$ .~~

Evil Plan  
 • Basis means  $S$  spans  $V$  and  $S$  is lin. ind.



Proof: Since  $S$  is a basis for  $V$ ,  $S$  spans  $V$  and  $S$  is linearly independent.

Let  $\vec{u} = c_1\vec{v}_1 + c_2\vec{v}_2 + \dots + c_n\vec{v}_n$  and suppose  $\vec{u}$  can also be written as  $\vec{u} = b_1\vec{v}_1 + b_2\vec{v}_2 + \dots + b_n\vec{v}_n$ .

$$\vec{u} = c_1\vec{v}_1 + c_2\vec{v}_2 + \dots + c_n\vec{v}_n$$

$$- \vec{u} = (b_1\vec{v}_1 + b_2\vec{v}_2 + \dots + b_n\vec{v}_n)$$

$$\vec{0} = (c_1\vec{v}_1 - b_1\vec{v}_1) + (c_2\vec{v}_2 - b_2\vec{v}_2) + \dots + (c_n\vec{v}_n - b_n\vec{v}_n)$$

$$\vec{0} = (c_1 - b_1)\vec{v}_1 + (c_2 - b_2)\vec{v}_2 + \dots + (c_n - b_n)\vec{v}_n$$

Since  $S$  is linearly independent,

$$c_1 - b_1 = 0, c_2 - b_2 = 0, \dots, c_n - b_n = 0$$

$$c_1 = b_1, c_2 = b_2, \dots, c_n = b_n$$

Thus the basis representation is unique. //

### THEOREM 1.9: BASES AND LINEAR DEPENDENCE

If  $S = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  is a basis for a vector space  $V$ , then every set containing more than  $n$  vectors in  $V$  is linearly dependent.

### THEOREM 1.10: NUMBER OF VECTORS IN A BASIS

If a vector space  $V$  has one basis with  $n$  vectors, then every basis for  $V$  has  $n$  vectors.

Proof: Let  $S_1 = \{\vec{v}_1, \vec{v}_2, \dots, \vec{v}_n\}$  be a basis for  $V$ , and suppose  $S_2 = \{\vec{u}_1, \vec{u}_2, \dots, \vec{u}_m\}$  also be a basis for  $V$ . Since  $S_1$  is linearly independent and  $S_2$  spans  $V$ ,  $n \leq m$  [Thm. 1.9]. Similarly, since  $S_2$  is linearly independent and  $S_1$  spans  $V$ ,  $m \leq n$  [Thm. 1.9]. Hence,  $m = n$ . //

### DEFINITION OF DIMENSION OF A VECTOR SPACE

If a vector space  $V$  has a basis consisting of  $n$  vectors, then the number  $n$  is called the dimension of  $V$ , denoted by  $\dim(V)$ . When  $V$  consists of the zero vector alone, the dimension of  $V$  is defined as 0.

Example 8: Determine the dimension of the vector space.

a.  $R^2$

$$\dim(R^2) = 2$$

b.  $R^5$

$$\dim(R^5) = 5$$

c.  $R^n$

$$\dim(R^n) = n$$

THEOREM 1.11: BASIS TESTS IN AN  $n$ -DIMENSIONAL SPACE

Let  $V$  be a vector space of dimension  $n$ .

1. If  $S = \{\vec{v}_1, \vec{v}_2, \dots, \vec{v}_n\}$  is a linearly independent set of vectors in  $V$ , then  $S$  is a basis for  $V$ .
2. If  $S = \{\vec{v}_1, \vec{v}_2, \dots, \vec{v}_n\}$  spans  $V$ , then  $S$  is a basis for  $V$ .

Example 9: Determine whether  $S$  is a basis for the indicated vector space.

$S = \{(1,2), (1,-1)\}$  for  $\mathbb{R}^2$ .  $\dim(\mathbb{R}^2) = 2$

$$c_1(1,2) + c_2(1,-1) = (0,0)$$

$$\begin{aligned} c_1 + c_2 &= 0 \\ 2c_1 - c_2 &= 0 \\ \hline 3c_1 &= 0 \\ c_1 &= 0 \\ c_2 &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

$c_1 = c_2 = 0 \rightarrow S$  is linearly independent, and  $S$  has 2 vectors and  $2 = \dim(\mathbb{R}^2)$  so  $S$  is a basis for  $\mathbb{R}^2$ .

## 2.1 Matrix Operations

### Learning Objectives

1. Determine whether two matrices are equal
2. Add and subtract matrices, and multiply a matrix by a scalar
3. Multiply two matrices
4. Use matrices to solve a system of equations
5. Partition a matrix and write a linear combination of column vectors

Matrices can be thought of as adjoined column vectors. They are represented in the following ways:

1. Capital letter  $A, B, C$
2. Representative element  $A = [a_{ij}]$

3. Rectangular array

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} b_{11} & b_{12} & b_{13} & \cdots & b_{1n} \\ b_{21} & b_{22} & b_{23} & \cdots & b_{2n} \\ b_{31} & b_{32} & b_{33} & \cdots & b_{3n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ b_{m1} & b_{m2} & b_{m3} & \cdots & b_{mn} \end{bmatrix}$$

### DEFINITION OF EQUALITY OF MATRICES

Two matrices  $A = [a_{ij}]$  and  $B = [b_{ij}]$  are equal when they have the same size  $m \times n$  and  $a_{ij} = b_{ij}$  for  $1 \leq i \leq m$  and  $1 \leq j \leq n$ .

Example 1: Are matrices A and B equal? Please explain.

$$A = [1 \quad -1 \quad 3 \quad 8] \quad 1 \times 4$$
$$B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 3 \\ 8 \end{bmatrix} \quad 4 \times 1$$

**NO**  $\rightarrow$  not the same size!

Example 2: Find  $x$  and  $y$ .

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2x-1 & 4 \\ 3 & y^3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -5 & 4 \\ 3 & \frac{1}{8} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$2x-1 = -5 \\ x = -2$$

$$(y^3)^{1/3} = \left(\frac{1}{8}\right)^{1/3} \\ y = \frac{1}{2}$$

A matrix that has only one column is called a column matrix or column vector. A matrix that has only one row is called a row matrix or row vector. As we learned earlier, boldface lowercase letters often designate row matrix and column matrix.

$$\vec{a}_1 = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} \\ a_{21} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\vec{a}_2 = \begin{bmatrix} a_{12} \\ a_{22} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} \vec{a}_1 & \vec{a}_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix}$$

### DEFINITION OF MATRIX ADDITION

If  $A = [a_{ij}]$  and  $B = [b_{ij}]$  are matrices of size  $m \times n$ , then their Sum is the  $m \times n$  matrix given by

$$A+B = [a_{ij} + b_{ij}]$$

The sum of two matrices of different sizes is undefined.

### DEFINITION OF SCALAR MULTIPLICATION

If  $A = [a_{ij}]$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix and  $c$  is a scalar, then the scalar multiple of  $A$  by  $c$  is the  $m \times n$  matrix given by

$$cA = [ca_{ij}]$$

Note: You can use  $-A$  to represent the scalar product  $(-1)A$ . If  $A$  and  $B$  are of the same size, then  $A - B$  represents the sum of  $A$  and  $-B$ .

Example 3: Find the following for the matrices

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -3 & 6 \\ 2 & 0 & 2 \\ -2 & 8 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } B = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 2 & 7 \\ -1 & 9 & -4 \\ -3 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

a.  $A + B$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 6 & -1 & 13 \\ 1 & 9 & -2 \\ -5 & 8 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

b.  $2A - B$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -6 & 12 \\ 4 & 0 & 4 \\ -4 & 16 & -2 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -5 & -2 & -7 \\ +1 & -9 & +4 \\ +3 & -0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \Rightarrow \begin{bmatrix} -3 & -8 & 5 \\ 5 & -9 & 8 \\ -1 & 16 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$$

### DEFINITION OF MATRIX MULTIPLICATION

If  $A = [a_{ij}]$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix and  $B = [b_{ij}]$  is an  $n \times p$  matrix, then the product  $AB$  is an  $m \times p$  matrix.

$$AB = C = [c_{ij}]$$

where

$$c_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^n a_{ik} b_{kj} = a_{i1} b_{1j} + a_{i2} b_{2j} + \dots + a_{in} b_{nj}$$

To find an entry in the  $i$ th row and the  $j$ th column of the product  $AB$ , multiply the entries in the  $i$ th row of  $A$  by the corresponding entries in the  $j$ th column of  $B$  and then Sum the results.

A times B  
 $3 \times 2$        $2 \times 4$   
 resulting size is  $3 \times 4$

Example 4: Find the product  $AB$ , where

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 15 & 0 \\ 4 & 5 \\ -3 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } B = \begin{bmatrix} -12 & 7 & 5 & -1 \\ -13 & 1 & 2 & 11 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 15 & 0 \\ 4 & 5 \\ -3 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -12 & 7 & 5 & -1 \\ -13 & 1 & 2 & 11 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 15(-12) + 0(-13) & 15(7) + 0(1) & 15(5) + 0(2) & 15(-1) + 0(11) \\ 4(-12) + 5(-13) & 4(7) + 5(1) & 4(5) + 5(2) & 4(7) + 5(11) \\ -3(-12) + 1(-13) & -3(7) + 1(5) & -3(5) + 1(2) & -3(7) + 1(11) \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} -180 & 105 & 75 & -15 \\ -113 & 33 & 30 & 51 \\ 23 & -20 & -13 & 14 \end{bmatrix}$$

Example 5: Consider the matrices  $A$  and  $B$ .

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 3 \\ 11 & 13 \end{bmatrix} \text{ and } B = \begin{bmatrix} -4 & 4 \\ 6 & 13 \end{bmatrix}$$

a. Find  $A+B$

$$A+B = \begin{bmatrix} -1+(-4) & 3+4 \\ 11+6 & 13+13 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -5 & 7 \\ 17 & 26 \end{bmatrix}$$

b. Find  $B+A$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} -4+(-1) & 4+3 \\ 6+11 & 13+13 \end{bmatrix} = B+A$$

c. Find  $AB$

$$\begin{bmatrix} -1 & 3 \\ 11 & 13 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -4 & 4 \\ 6 & 13 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} (-1)(-4) + (3)(6) & (-1)(4) + (3)(13) \\ (11)(-4) + (13)(6) & (11)(4) + (13)(13) \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 22 & 35 \\ 34 & 213 \end{bmatrix}$$

d. Find  $BA$

$$\begin{bmatrix} -4 & 4 \\ 6 & 13 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 3 \\ 11 & 13 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} (-4)(-1) + (4)(11) & (-4)(3) + (4)(13) \\ (6)(-1) + (13)(11) & (6)(3) + (13)(13) \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 48 & 40 \\ 137 & 187 \end{bmatrix}$$

Is matrix addition commutative?

It looks like it might be ☺

Is matrix multiplication commutative?

**NO**



$$\begin{matrix} \vec{a}_1 & \vec{a}_2 & \vec{a}_3 & \vec{x} & \vec{b} \\ \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{bmatrix} & \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix} & = & \begin{bmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ b_3 \end{bmatrix} \\ 3 \times 3 & 3 \times 1 & & 3 \times 1 \end{matrix}$$

$$\vec{a}_i \cdot \vec{x}_i = \begin{bmatrix} a_{i1} \\ a_{i2} \\ a_{i3} \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{i1}x_1 \\ a_{i2}x_2 \\ a_{i3}x_3 \end{bmatrix}$$

## SYSTEMS OF LINEAR EQUATIONS

The system

$$\begin{cases} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + a_{13}x_3 \\ a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + a_{23}x_3 \\ a_{31}x_1 + a_{32}x_2 + a_{33}x_3 \end{cases} = \begin{bmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ b_3 \end{bmatrix}$$

can be written as

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ b_3 \end{bmatrix}$$

or equivalently,  $A\vec{x} = \vec{b}$

Example 6: Write the system of equations in the form  $Ax = b$  and solve this matrix equation for  $x$ .

$$2x_1 + 3x_2 = 5$$

$$x_1 + 4x_2 = 10$$

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, \vec{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix}, \vec{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 10 \end{bmatrix} \longrightarrow \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 \\ 1 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 10 \end{bmatrix} \checkmark$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & | & 5 \\ 1 & 4 & | & 10 \end{bmatrix} \xrightarrow{-3R_2 + R_1 \rightarrow R_1} \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & | & 5 \\ 0 & 1 & | & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\xrightarrow{-2R_2 + R_1 \rightarrow R_2} \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 3 & | & 5 \\ 0 & -5 & | & -15 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & | & -4 \\ 0 & 1 & | & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & | & -2 \\ 0 & 1 & | & 3 \end{bmatrix} \longrightarrow x_1 = -2, x_2 = 3$$

## PARTITIONED MATRICES

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix} \quad \mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix} \quad \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ \vdots \\ b_m \end{bmatrix}$$

$\vec{a}_1 \quad \vec{a}_2 \quad \cdots \quad \vec{a}_n$

## LINEAR COMBINATIONS (MATRICES)

The matrix product  $A\mathbf{x}$  is a linear combination of the column vectors  $\mathbf{a}_1, \mathbf{a}_2, \mathbf{a}_3, \dots, \mathbf{a}_n$  that form the

coefficient matrix  $A$ .

$$A\vec{x} = x_1 \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} \\ a_{21} \\ \vdots \\ a_{m1} \end{bmatrix} + x_2 \begin{bmatrix} a_{12} \\ a_{22} \\ \vdots \\ a_{m2} \end{bmatrix} + \cdots + x_n \begin{bmatrix} a_{1n} \\ a_{2n} \\ \vdots \\ a_{mn} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A\vec{x} = x_1 \vec{a}_1 + x_2 \vec{a}_2 + \cdots + x_n \vec{a}_n$$

The system  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$  is consistent if and only if  $\mathbf{b}$  can be expressed as such a linear

combination, where the coefficients of the linear combination are a

solution of the system.

Example 7: Write the column matrix  $\mathbf{b}$  as a linear combination of the columns of  $A$

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} \vec{a}_1 & \vec{a}_2 \\ -1 & 3 \\ 16 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} -7 \\ 63 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \vec{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$x_1 \vec{a}_1 + x_2 \vec{a}_2 = \vec{b}$$

$$x_1 \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 16 \end{bmatrix} + x_2 \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -7 \\ 63 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$4 \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 16 \end{bmatrix} + (-1) \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -7 \\ 63 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} -1x_1 \\ 16x_1 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 3x_2 \\ 1x_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -7 \\ 63 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} -x_1 + 3x_2 \\ 16x_1 + x_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -7 \\ 63 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned} -x_1 + 3x_2 &= -7 \\ 16x_1 + x_2 &= 63 \end{aligned}$$

$$x_1 = 4, x_2 = -1$$

Example 8: Find the products  $AB$  and  $BA$  for the diagonal matrices.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -5 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} -7 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 12 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$AB = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -5 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -7 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 4 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 12 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 3(-7) + 0(0) + 0(0) & 3(0) + 0(4) + 0(0) & 3(0) + 0(0) + 0(12) \\ 0(-7) + (-5)(0) + 0(0) & 0(0) + (-5)(4) + 0(0) & 0(0) + (-5)(0) + 0(12) \\ 0(-7) + 0(0) + 5(0) & 0(0) + 0(4) + 5(0) & 0(0) + 0(0) + 5(12) \end{bmatrix}$$

Example 9: Use the given partitions of  $A$  and  $B$  to compute  $AB$ .

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \\ 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \text{ and } B = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$3 \times 2$                        $2 \times 2$

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ A_{21} & A_{22} \end{bmatrix}, \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} B_{11} \\ B_{21} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$AB = \begin{bmatrix} A_{11}B_{11} + A_{12}B_{21} \\ A_{21}B_{11} + A_{22}B_{21} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 8 & 1 \\ -3 & 0 \\ 11 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} -21 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -20 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 60 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A_{11} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} \quad A_{12} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A_{21} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 \end{bmatrix} \quad A_{22} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$B_{11} = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad B_{21} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 0 \\ -3 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 9 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

## 2.2: Properties of Matrix Operations

### Learning Objectives

1. Use the properties of matrix addition, scalar multiplication, and zero matrices
2. Use the properties of matrix multiplication and the identity matrix
3. Find the transpose of a matrix
4. Use Stochastic matrices for applications

### THEOREM 2.1: PROPERTIES OF MATRIX ADDITION AND SCALAR MULTIPLICATION

If  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$  are  $m \times n$  matrices, and  $c$  and  $d$  are scalars, then the following properties are true.  
 Let  $A = [a_{ij}]$ ,  $B = [b_{ij}]$ ,  $C = [c_{ij}] \Rightarrow a_{ij}, b_{ij}$ , and  $c_{ij}$ ,  $1 \leq i \leq m$ ,  $1 \leq j \leq n$ ,  $\in \mathbb{R}$ .

1.  $A + B = \underline{B + A}$  Commutative property of addition

Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
 A + B &= [a_{ij}] + [b_{ij}] && \rightarrow = [b_{ij}] + [a_{ij}] \text{ defn matrix (+)} \\
 &= [a_{ij} + b_{ij}] \text{ defn matrix (+)} && = B + A // \\
 &= [b_{ij} + a_{ij}] \text{ R is comm. (+)}
 \end{aligned}$$

2.  $A + (B + C) = \underline{(A + B) + C}$  Associative property of addition

3.  $(cd)A = \underline{c(dA)}$  Associative property of multiplication

$$\begin{aligned}
 (cd)A &= (cd)[a_{ij}] && \rightarrow = [c(da_{ij})] \text{ R is assoc (x)} \\
 &= [(cd)a_{ij}] \text{ defn matrix scalar mult} && = c[da_{ij}] \text{ defn matrix scalar mult}
 \end{aligned}$$

4.  $1A = \underline{A}$  Multiplicative Identity

5.  $c(A + B) = \underline{cA + cB}$  Distributive property

Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
 c(A + B) &= c([a_{ij}] + [b_{ij}]) && \rightarrow = [ca_{ij}] + [cb_{ij}] \text{ defn matrix (+)} \\
 &= c[a_{ij} + b_{ij}] \text{ defn matrix (+)} && = c[a_{ij}] + c[b_{ij}] \\
 &= [c(a_{ij} + b_{ij})] \text{ defn matrix scalar mult} && = cA + cB // \\
 &= [ca_{ij} + cb_{ij}] \text{ R is distributive} && \text{defn matrix scalar mult}
 \end{aligned}$$

6.  $(c + d)A = \underline{cA + dA}$  Distributive property

Example 1: For the matrices below,  $c = -2$ , and  $d = 5$ ,

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -3 & 5 \\ 3 & 4 \\ 4 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 7 \\ 6 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$C = \begin{bmatrix} -7 & 1 \\ -2 & 3 \\ 11 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

a.  $c(A+C) = -2 \begin{bmatrix} -10 & 6 \\ 1 & 7 \\ 15 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} +20 & -12 \\ -2 & -14 \\ -30 & -20 \end{bmatrix}$$

b.  $cdB = -10 \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 7 \\ 6 & 9 \end{bmatrix}$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} -10 & -10 \\ -20 & -70 \\ -60 & -90 \end{bmatrix}$$

c.  $cA - (B+C) = \begin{bmatrix} 12 & -12 \\ -6 & -18 \\ -25 & -27 \end{bmatrix}$

## THEOREM 2.2: PROPERTIES OF ZERO MATRICES

If  $A$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix, and  $c$  is a scalar, then the following properties are true.

1.  $A + O_{mn} = \underline{A}$       additive identity
2.  $A + (-A) = \underline{O}$       additive inverse
3. If  $cA = O_{mn}$ , then  $\underline{c = 0 \text{ or } A = O_{mn}}$ .

Example 2: Solve for  $X$  in the equation, given

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 3 & -4 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 3 \\ 2 & 0 \\ -4 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

a.  $X = 3A - 2B$

$$X = \begin{bmatrix} -6 & -3 \\ 3 & 0 \\ 9 & -12 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -6 \\ -4 & 0 \\ 8 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$X = \begin{bmatrix} -6 & -9 \\ -1 & 0 \\ 17 & -10 \end{bmatrix}$$

b.  $(2A + 4B) = (-2X)$

$$-A - 2B = X$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \\ -3 & 4 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -6 \\ -4 & 0 \\ 8 & 2 \end{bmatrix} = X$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & -5 \\ -5 & 0 \\ 5 & 6 \end{bmatrix} = X$$

**THEOREM 2.3: PROPERTIES OF MATRIX MULTIPLICATION**

$x(2+y) = 2x + xy \rightarrow$  with matrices you can't ever assume comm.

If  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$  are matrices (with sizes such that the given matrix products are defined), and  $c$  is a scalar, then the following properties are true.

1.  $A(BC) = \underline{(AB)C}$  Associative property of multiplication
2.  $A(B+C) = \underline{AB+AC}$  Distributive property of multiplication
3.  $(A+B)C = \underline{AC+BC}$  Distributive property of multiplication
4.  $c(AB) = (cA)B = \underline{A(cB)}$

Example 3: Show that  $AC = BC$ , even though  $A \neq B$ .

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 5 & 4 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -6 & 3 \\ 5 & 4 & 4 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$C = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 4 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$AC = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 5 & 4 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 4 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 12 & -6 & 3 \\ 16 & -8 & 4 \\ 4 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$BC = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -6 & 3 \\ 5 & 4 & 4 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 4 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 12 & -6 & 3 \\ 16 & -8 & 4 \\ 4 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

)  $AC = BC$

Example 4: Show that  $AB = \mathbf{0}$ , even though  $A \neq \mathbf{0}$  and  $B \neq \mathbf{0}$ .

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 2 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 \\ -\frac{1}{2} & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$AB = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 2 & 4 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 \\ -\frac{1}{2} & 1 \end{bmatrix} \\ = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{wow!!}$$

#### THEOREM 2.4: PROPERTIES OF THE IDENTITY MATRIX

If  $A$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix, then the following properties are true.

1.  $AI_n = \underline{A}$

2.  $I_m A = \underline{A}$

$$I_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad I_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \\ I_n = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

#### THEOREM 2.5: NUMBER OF SOLUTIONS OF A LINEAR SYSTEM

For a system of linear equations, precisely one of the following is true.

1. The system has exactly one solution.
2. The system has infinitely many solutions.
3. The system has no solution.



THE TRANSPOSE OF A MATRIX

The transpose of a matrix is denoted  $A^T$  and is formed by writing its columns as rows.

Example 5: Find the transpose of the matrix.

a.  $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 2 & 9 \\ 4 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$   
 $3 \times 2$

$A^T = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 4 \\ -1 & 9 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$   
 $2 \times 3$

b.  $A = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & -7 & 19 \\ -7 & 0 & 23 \\ 19 & 23 & -32 \end{bmatrix}$   
 $3 \times 3$

$A^T = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & -7 & 19 \\ -7 & 0 & 23 \\ 19 & 23 & -32 \end{bmatrix}$   
 $3 \times 3$

If  $A = A^T$   
 $A$  is symmetric

THEOREM 2.6: PROPERTIES OF TRANSPOSES

If  $A$  and  $B$  are matrices (with sizes such that the given matrix operations are defined), and  $c$  is a scalar, then the following properties are true. Let  $A = [a_{ij}]$ ,  $B = [b_{ij}] \ni a_{ij}, b_{ij} \in \mathbb{R}$

1.  $(A^T)^T = A$  Transpose of a transpose

Proof:  
 $(A^T)^T = ([a_{ij}]^T)^T = [a_{ij}] = A //$

2.  $(A+B)^T = A^T + B^T$  Transpose of a sum

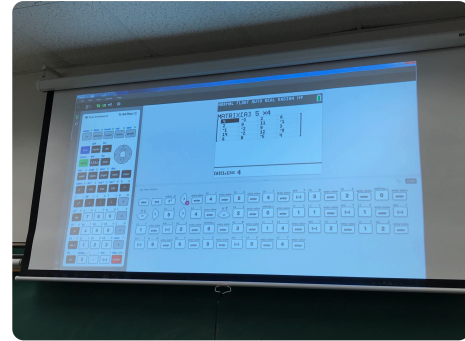
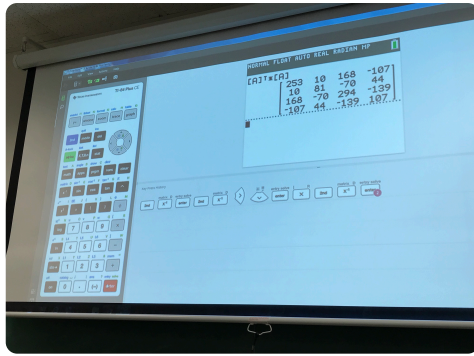
Proof:  
 $(A+B)^T = ([a_{ij}] + [b_{ij}])^T$   
 $= [a_{ij} + b_{ij}]^T$  defn of matrix (+)  
 $= [a_{ji} + b_{ji}] \rightarrow = [a_{ji}] + [b_{ji}] \rightarrow = A^T + B^T //$

3.  $(cA)^T = cA^T$  Transpose of a scalar multiple

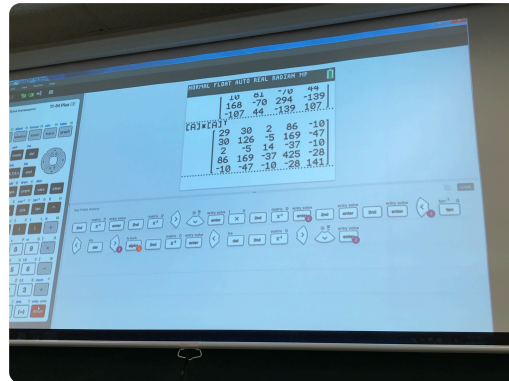
4.  $(AB)^T = B^T A^T$  Transpose of a product

Example 6: Find a)  $A^T A$  and b)  $AA^T$ . Show that each of these products is symmetric.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -3 & 2 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 11 & -1 \\ -1 & -2 & 0 & 3 \\ 14 & -2 & 12 & -9 \\ 6 & 8 & -5 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$



$A$  is  $5 \times 4$   
 $A^T$  is  $4 \times 5$



Example 7: A square matrix is called skew-symmetric when  $A^T = -A$ . Prove that if  $A$  and  $B$  are skew-symmetric matrices, then  $A+B$  is skew-symmetric.

$$\begin{aligned} (A+B)^T &= A^T + B^T \\ &= -A + (-B) \quad [A \text{ and } B \text{ are skew-symmetric}] \\ &= -1(A+B) \\ &= -(A+B) \quad // \end{aligned}$$

Evil Plan  
 $(A+B)^T = -(A+B)$

## STOCHASTIC MATRICES

Many types of applications involve a finite set of states  $\{s_1, s_2, \dots, s_n\}$  of a given population. The probability that a member of a population will change from the  $j$ th state to the  $i$ th state is represented by a number  $P_{ij}$ , where  $0 \leq P_{ij} \leq 1$ . A probability of 0 means that the member is certain not to change from the  $j$ th state to the  $i$ th state whereas a probability of 1 means that the member is certain to change from the  $j$ th state to the  $i$ th state.

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} P_{11} & P_{12} & \cdots & P_{1n} \\ P_{21} & P_{22} & \cdots & P_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ P_{n1} & P_{n2} & \cdots & P_{nn} \end{bmatrix}$$

$P$  is called the matrix of transition probabilities. At each transition, each member in a given state must either stay in that state or change to another state. Therefore, the sum of the entries in any column is 1. This type of matrix is called stochastic. An  $n \times n$  matrix  $P$  is a **stochastic matrix** when each entry is a number between 0 and 1 inclusive.

Example 8: Determine whether the matrix is stochastic.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0.35 & 0.2 \\ 0.65 & 0.75 \end{bmatrix}$$

1 0.95  
not  $\nearrow$   
stochastic

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{8} & \frac{3}{5} & \frac{1}{12} \\ \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{10} & \frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{3}{8} & \frac{3}{10} & \frac{7}{12} \end{bmatrix}$$

1 1 1

$B$  is a stochastic matrix

Example 9: A medical researcher is studying the spread of a virus in a population of 1000 laboratory mice. During any week, there is an 80% probability that an infected mouse will overcome the virus, and during the same week, there is a 10% probability that a noninfected mouse will become infected. One hundred mice are currently infected with the virus. How many will be infected (a) next week and (b) in two weeks?

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} P_{11} & P_{12} \\ P_{21} & P_{22} \end{bmatrix} \begin{matrix} I \\ NI \end{matrix}$$

$$X_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 100 \\ 900 \end{bmatrix} \begin{matrix} I \\ NI \end{matrix}$$

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} 0.2 & 0.1 \\ 0.8 & 0.9 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$a) P X_0 = \begin{bmatrix} 0.2 & 0.1 \\ 0.8 & 0.9 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 100 \\ 900 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 110 \\ 890 \end{bmatrix} \begin{matrix} I \\ NI \end{matrix} = X_1$$

Next week, 110 mice will be infected.

$$b) P[P X_0] = P X_1 \rightarrow P^2 X_0$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 0.2 & 0.1 \\ 0.8 & 0.9 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 110 \\ 890 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 111 \\ 889 \end{bmatrix}$$

In 2 weeks, 111 mice will be infected.

$$= X_2$$

```
octave:2> P = [0.2 0.1; 0.8 0.9]
P =
```

```
0.20000 0.10000
0.80000 0.90000
```

```
octave:3> X0 = [100; 900]
X0 =
```

```
100
900
```

```
octave:4> P*X0
ans =
```

```
110
890
```

```
octave:5> P^2*X0
ans =
```

```
111.00
889.00
```

```
octave:6> P^10*X0
ans =
```

```
111.11
888.8
```

Example 10: It has been claimed that the best predictor of today's weather is yesterday's weather. Suppose that in San Diego, if it rained yesterday, then there is a 20% chance of rain today, and if it did not rain yesterday, then there is a 90% chance of no rain today.

- a. Find the transition matrix describing the rain probabilities.

$$P = \begin{array}{cc} & \begin{array}{c} R \quad NR \\ \begin{bmatrix} .2 & .1 \\ .8 & .9 \end{bmatrix} \end{array} \\ \begin{array}{c} R \\ NR \end{array} & \end{array}$$

$$X_0 = \begin{array}{c} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \\ \begin{array}{c} R \\ NR \end{array} \end{array}$$

- b. If it rained Sunday, what is the chance of rain on Tuesday?

$$\left( \begin{bmatrix} .2 & .1 \\ .8 & .9 \end{bmatrix} \right)^2 \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} .12 \\ .88 \end{bmatrix}$$

On Tuesday, there's a 12% chance of rain.

- c. If it did not rain on Wednesday, what is the chance of rain on Saturday?

$$\left( \begin{bmatrix} .2 & .1 \\ .8 & .9 \end{bmatrix} \right)^3 \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} .11 \\ .89 \end{bmatrix}$$

On Saturday, there's an 11% chance of rain.

- d. If the probability of rain today is 30%, what is the chance of rain tomorrow?

$$\begin{bmatrix} .2 & .1 \\ .8 & .9 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} .3 \\ .7 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} .13 \\ .87 \end{bmatrix}$$

There would be a 13% chance of rain tomorrow.

## 2.3: The Inverse of a Matrix

### Learning Objectives

1. Find the inverse of a matrix (if it exists)
2. Use properties of inverse matrices
3. Use an inverse matrix to solve a system of linear equations
4. Encode and decode messages
5. Elementary Matrices
6. LU-Factorization

### DEFINITION OF THE INVERSE OF A MATRIX

An  $n \times n$  matrix  $A$  is invertible or nonsingular when there exists an  $n \times n$  matrix  $B$  such that

$$AB = BA = I_n$$

where  $I_n$  is the identity matrix of order  $n$ . The matrix  $B$  is called the (multiplicative) inverse of  $A$ . A matrix that does not have an inverse is called noninvertible or singular.

\*Nonsquare matrices do not have inverses.

Example 1: For the matrices below, show that  $B$  is the inverse of  $A$ .

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$AB = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad BA = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

### THEOREM 2.7: UNIQUENESS OF AN INVERSE

If  $A$  is an invertible matrix, then its inverse is unique. The inverse of  $A$  is denoted  $A^{-1}$ .

Proof: Since  $A$  is invertible we know  $\exists$  a  $B \ni AB = I = BA$ . Suppose  $\exists$  a  $C \ni AC = I = CA$ .  
 $C(AB) = CI \rightarrow IB = C$   
 $(CA)B = C \rightarrow B = C$ .

$\therefore$  The inverse of  $A$  is unique. //

## FINDING THE INVERSE OF A MATRIX BY GAUSS-JORDAN ELIMINATION

Let  $A$  be a square matrix of order  $n$ .

- Write the  $n \times 2n$  matrix that consists of the given matrix  $A$  on the left and the  $n \times n$  identity matrix  $I_n$  on the right to obtain  $[A \ I_n]$ . This process is called adjoining matrix  $I$  to matrix  $A$ .
- If possible, row reduce  $A$  to  $I_n$  using elementary row operations on the entire matrix  $[A \ I_n]$ . The result will be the matrix  $[I_n \ A^{-1}]$ . If this is not possible, then  $A$  is noninvertible (or singular).
- Check your work by multiplying to see that  $AA^{-1} = A^{-1}A = I_n$ .

Example 2: Find the inverse of the matrix (if it exists), by solving the matrix equation  $AX = I$ .

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 12 & 3 \\ 5 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$AX = I$  if  $A$  is invertible  $A^{-1}AX = A^{-1}I$   
 $X = A^{-1}$

$$[A \ I_2] = \left[ \begin{array}{cc|cc} 12 & 3 & 1 & 0 \\ 5 & -2 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right]$$

$-5R_1 + 12R_2 \rightarrow R_2$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{cc|cc} 12 & 3 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -39 & -5 & 12 \end{array} \right]$$

$13R_1 + R_2 \rightarrow R_1$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{cc|cc} 156 & 0 & 8 & 12 \\ 0 & -39 & -5 & 12 \end{array} \right]$$

$\frac{1}{39}R_1 \rightarrow R_1$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{cc|cc} 1 & 0 & \frac{7}{174} & \frac{3}{29} \\ 0 & -39 & -5 & 12 \end{array} \right]$$

$-\frac{1}{29}R_2 \rightarrow R_2$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{cc|cc} 1 & 0 & \frac{2}{39} & \frac{1}{13} \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{5}{39} & -\frac{4}{13} \end{array} \right]$$

$$= [I_n \ A^{-1}]$$

$$A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{2}{39} & \frac{1}{13} \\ \frac{5}{39} & -\frac{4}{13} \end{bmatrix}$$



Example 3: Find the inverse of the matrix (if it exists).

a.  $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 \\ 2 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$

b.  $A = \begin{bmatrix} 10 & 5 & -7 \\ -5 & 1 & 4 \\ 3 & 2 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$

$$[A | I_3] = \left[ \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 10 & 5 & -7 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ -5 & 1 & 4 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 3 & 2 & -2 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right]$$

$R_1 + 2R_2 \rightarrow R_2$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 10 & 5 & -7 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 7 & 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 3 & 2 & -2 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right]$$

$-3R_1 + 10R_3 \rightarrow R_3$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 10 & 5 & -7 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 7 & 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & 1 & -3 & 0 & 10 \end{array} \right]$$

$-5R_2 + 7R_3 \rightarrow R_3$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 10 & 5 & -7 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 7 & 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & -26 & -10 & 70 \end{array} \right]$$

$\frac{1}{2}R_3 \rightarrow R_3$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 10 & 5 & -7 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 7 & 1 & 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -13 & -5 & 35 \end{array} \right]$$

$-R_3 + R_2 \rightarrow R_2$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 10 & 5 & -7 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 7 & 0 & 14 & 7 & -35 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -13 & -5 & 35 \end{array} \right]$$

$R_1 + 7R_3 \rightarrow R_1$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 10 & 5 & 0 & -90 & -35 & 245 \\ 0 & 7 & 0 & 14 & 7 & -35 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -13 & -5 & 35 \end{array} \right]$$

$\frac{1}{7}R_2 \rightarrow R_2$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 10 & 5 & 0 & -90 & -35 & 245 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 & -5 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -13 & -5 & 35 \end{array} \right]$$

$-5R_2 + R_1 \rightarrow R_1$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 10 & 0 & 0 & -100 & -40 & 210 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 & -5 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -13 & -5 & 35 \end{array} \right]$$

$\frac{1}{10}R_1 \rightarrow R_1$

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 0 & -10 & -4 & 21 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 2 & 1 & -5 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -13 & -5 & 35 \end{array} \right]$$

$$= \left[ I_3 \mid A^{-1} \right]$$

$$A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} -10 & -4 & 21 \\ 2 & 1 & -5 \\ -13 & -5 & 35 \end{bmatrix}$$

## THEOREM 2.8: PROPERTIES OF INVERSE MATRICES

If  $A$  is an invertible matrix,  $k$  is a positive integer, and  $c$  is a nonzero scalar, then  $A^{-1}$ ,  $A^k$ ,  $cA$ , and  $A^T$  are invertible and the following are true.

1.  $(A^{-1})^{-1} = \underline{A}$

$$BA = I = A^{-1}A$$

Proof:

Since  $A$  is invertible, we know  $\exists B \ni AB = BA = I$ . So  $B = A^{-1}$  and  $BA = A^{-1}A = I$ . So  $A$  is the inverse of  $A^{-1}$ . //

2.  $(A^k)^{-1} = \underline{A^{-1}A^{-1}A^{-1} \dots A^{-1}} = (A^{-1})^k$   
 $k$  times

3.  $(cA)^{-1} = \underline{\frac{1}{c}A^{-1}}$

Proof:

$$(cA)\left(\frac{1}{c}A^{-1}\right) = (c \cdot \frac{1}{c})(AA^{-1}) = 1I_n = I_n \checkmark$$

$$\left(\frac{1}{c}A^{-1}\right)(cA) = \left(\frac{1}{c} \cdot c\right)(A^{-1}A) = 1I_n = I_n \checkmark$$

4.  $(A^T)^{-1} = \underline{(A^{-1})^T}$

## THEOREM 2.9: THE INVERSE OF A PRODUCT

If  $A$  and  $B$  are invertible matrices of order  $n$ , then  $AB$  is invertible and  $(AB)^{-1} = B^{-1}A^{-1}$ .

Proof:

$$\begin{aligned} (AB)(B^{-1}A^{-1}) &= A(BB^{-1})A^{-1} \\ &= A I_n A^{-1} \\ &= AA^{-1} \\ &= I_n \checkmark \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} (B^{-1}A^{-1})(AB) &= B^{-1}(A^{-1}A)B \\ &= B^{-1} I_n B \\ &= B^{-1}B \\ &= I_n \checkmark \end{aligned}$$

Example 4: Use the inverse matrices below for the following problems.

$$A^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{2}{7} & \frac{1}{7} \\ \frac{3}{7} & \frac{2}{7} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$B^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{5}{11} & \frac{2}{11} \\ \frac{3}{11} & -\frac{1}{11} \end{bmatrix}$$

a.  $(AB)^{-1} = B^{-1}A^{-1}$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} \frac{5}{11} & \frac{2}{11} \\ \frac{3}{11} & -\frac{1}{11} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{2}{7} & \frac{1}{7} \\ \frac{3}{7} & \frac{2}{7} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{4}{77} & \frac{9}{77} \\ -\frac{9}{77} & \frac{1}{77} \end{bmatrix}$$

b.  $(A^T)^{-1} = (A^{-1})^T$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{2}{7} & \frac{3}{7} \\ \frac{1}{7} & \frac{2}{7} \end{bmatrix}$$

c.  $(7A)^{-1} = \frac{1}{7}A^{-1}$

$$= \frac{1}{7} \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{2}{7} & \frac{1}{7} \\ \frac{3}{7} & \frac{2}{7} \end{bmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{2}{49} & \frac{1}{49} \\ \frac{3}{49} & \frac{2}{49} \end{bmatrix}$$

### THEOREM 2.10: CANCELLATION PROPERTIES

If  $C$  is an **invertible matrix**, then the following properties hold true.

1. If  $AC = BC$  then  $A = B$ . Right cancellation property

Proof:

$$ACC^{-1} = BCC^{-1} \quad [C \text{ is invertible}]$$

$$AI = BI$$

$$A = B //$$

2. If  $CA = CB$  then  $A = B$ . Left cancellation property

## THEOREM 2.11: SYSTEMS OF EQUATIONS WITH UNIQUE SOLUTIONS

If  $A$  is an invertible matrix, then the system of linear equations  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$  has a unique solution given by  $\mathbf{x} = A^{-1}\mathbf{b}$ .

Proof:

$$A^{-1}A\vec{x} = A^{-1}\vec{b}$$

$$I\vec{x} = A^{-1}\vec{b}$$

$$\vec{x} = A^{-1}\vec{b}$$

[A is invertible]

$A^{-1}$  is unique [Thm 2.7]. Suppose  $\exists \vec{c} \Rightarrow \vec{x} = A^{-1}\vec{c}$ . So,

$$A\vec{x} = AA^{-1}\vec{c}$$

$$A\vec{x} = I\vec{c}$$

$$A\vec{x} = \vec{c}$$

Since  $A\vec{x} = \vec{b}$ ,  $\vec{c} = \vec{b}$ .  $\therefore \vec{x} = A^{-1}\vec{b}$  is a unique solution to  $A\vec{x} = \vec{b}$ . //

### CRYPTOGRAPHY

A cryptogram is a message written according to a secret code. Suppose we assign a number to each letter in the alphabet.

0	_	14	N
1	A	15	O
2	B	16	P
3	C	17	Q
4	D	18	R
5	E	19	S
6	F	20	T
7	G	21	U
8	H	22	V
9	I	23	W
10	J	24	X
11	K	25	Y
12	L	26	Z
13	M		

Example 5: Write the uncoded row matrices of size  $1 \times 3$  for the message TARGET IS HOME.

$$\vec{r}_1 = [20 \ 1 \ 18]$$

$$\vec{r}_2 = [7 \ 5 \ 20]$$

$$\vec{r}_3 = [0 \ 9 \ 19]$$

$$\vec{r}_4 = [0 \ 8 \ 15]$$

$$\vec{r}_5 = [13 \ 5 \ 0]$$

Example 6: Use the following invertible matrix to encode the message TARGET IS HOME.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & -2 \\ -1 & 1 & 3 \\ 1 & -1 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$$

3x3

$$\vec{r}_1 A = [20 \ 1 \ 18] \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -2 & -2 \\ -1 & 1 & 3 \\ 1 & -1 & -4 \end{bmatrix} = [37 \ -57 \ -109] = \vec{d}_1$$

$$\vec{r}_2 A = [22 \ -29 \ -79] = \vec{d}_2$$

$$\vec{r}_3 A = [10 \ -10 \ -49] = \vec{d}_3$$

$$\vec{r}_4 A = [7 \ -7 \ 36] = \vec{d}_4$$

$$\vec{r}_5 A = [8 \ -21 \ -11] = \vec{d}_5$$

Example 7: How would you decode a message?

$$\vec{r}_i A = \vec{d}_i \text{ to encode}$$

$$r_i = \vec{d}_i A^{-1} \text{ to decode}$$

$$i = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5$$

37	-57	-109	22	-29
-79	10	-10	-49	7
-7	36	8	-21	-11

## DEFINITION OF AN ELEMENTARY MATRIX

An  $n \times n$  matrix is called an elementary matrix when it can be obtained from the identity matrix  $I_n$  by a single elementary row operation.

Example 8: Identify the matrices that are elementary below.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

rope

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$\rightarrow$   $-2R_2$  from  $I_3$   
 $+ R_3$  from  $I_3$   
 yes ☺

$$C = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 \\ -1 & -3 \end{bmatrix}$$

not square  
 so rope!

## THEOREM 2.12: REPRESENTING ELEMENTARY ROW OPERATIONS

Let  $E$  be the elementary matrix obtained by performing an elementary row operation on  $I_m$ .

If that same elementary row operation is performed on an  $m \times n$  matrix  $A$ , then the resulting matrix is given by the product  $EA$ .

Example 9: Given  $A$  and  $C$  below

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -3 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$C = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 4 & -3 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

find an elementary matrix  $E$  such that  $EA = C$ .

$$EA = C$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} e_{11} & e_{12} & e_{13} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & -3 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 4 & -3 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned} e_{11} &= 0 & -e_{13} &= 0 \rightarrow e_{11} = e_{13} \\ 2e_{11} + e_{12} + 2e_{13} &= 4 \\ -3e_{11} + 2e_{12} &= -3 \rightarrow e_{12} = \frac{1}{2}(3e_{11} - 3) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \rightarrow 2e_{11} + \frac{1}{2}(3e_{11} - 3) + 2e_{11} &= 4 \\ 4e_{11} + \frac{3}{2}e_{11} - \frac{3}{2} &= 4 \\ \frac{11}{2}e_{11} &= \frac{11}{2} \\ e_{11} &= 1 \\ e_{12} &= \frac{1}{2}(3 - 3) = 0 \\ e_{13} &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$E = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$I_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Example 10: Find a sequence of elementary matrices that can be used to write the matrix in row-echelon form.

Equivalent matrix to  $A$

Elementary Row Op,

Elementary Matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 3 & -3 & 6 \\ 1 & -1 & 2 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\downarrow$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 2 & -2 \\ 0 & 3 & -3 & 6 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$R_1 \leftrightarrow R_2$$

$$E_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\downarrow$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 2 & -2 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\frac{1}{3}R_2$$

$$E_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{3} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\downarrow$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 2 & -2 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\frac{1}{2}R_3$$

$$E_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\hookrightarrow = B$$

$E_3 E_2 E_1 A = B$  → This means that  $B$  is row-equivalent to  $A$   
 yes 😊 it checks out.

Furthermore,

$$A = E_1^{-1} E_2^{-1} E_3^{-1} B$$



## DEFINITION OF ROW EQUIVALENCE

Let  $A$  and  $B$  be  $m \times n$  matrices. Matrix  $B$  is row-equivalent to  $A$  when there exists a finite number of elementary matrices,  $E_1, E_2, \dots, E_k$  such that

$$B = E_k E_{k-1} E_{k-2} \cdots E_2 E_1 A$$

## THEOREM 2.13: ELEMENTARY MATRICES ARE INVERTIBLE

If  $E$  is an elementary matrix, then  $E^{-1}$  exists and is an elementary matrix.

Example 11: Find the inverse of the elementary matrix.

$$E = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Hmmm... to get  $E$ , on  $I_3$  we computed  $-3R_2 + R_3 \rightarrow R_3$ . So to undo it, we compute  $3R_2 + R_3 \rightarrow R_3$ .

$$E^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

In general:

The sign changes on the entry from the row that didn't change and all entries in the changed row are multiplied by the reciprocal of the row that changed in  $E$ .

## THEOREM 2.14: EQUIVALENT CONDITIONS

If  $A$  is an  $n \times n$  matrix, then the following statements are equivalent.

- $A$  is invertible.
- $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$  has a unique solution for every  $n \times 1$  column matrix  $\mathbf{b}$ .
- $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$  has only the trivial solution.
- $A$  is row-equivalent to  $I_n$ .
- $A$  can be written as the product of elementary matrices.

Lower  
 ↓ ↓ upper

THE LU-FACTORIZATION

3x3 lower  $\Delta$  matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & 0 & 0 \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & 0 \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{bmatrix}$$

3x3 upper  $\Delta$  matrix

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ 0 & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ 0 & 0 & a_{33} \end{bmatrix}$$

DEFINITION OF LU-FACTORIZATION

If the  $n \times n$  matrix  $A$  can be written as the product of a lower triangular matrix  $L$  and an upper triangular matrix  $U$ , then  $A = LU$  is an **LU-factorization** of  $A$ .

Example 12: Solve the linear system  $Ax = b$  by

1. Finding an LU-factorization of the coefficient matrix  $A$ .
2. Solving the lower triangular system  $Ly = b$ .
3. Solving the upper triangular system  $Ux = y$ .

$$I_4 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 2x_1 &= 4 \\ -2x_1 + x_2 - x_3 &= -4 \\ 6x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 &= 15 \\ -x_4 &= -1 \end{aligned} \quad \begin{matrix} 2, 1, 1, 1 \end{matrix}$$

row ops

Elementary Matrices

1)

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 6 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\downarrow$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 6 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$R_1 \leftrightarrow R_3$

$$E_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$E_1^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\downarrow$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 6 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & -2 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$\frac{1}{3}R_1 + 3R_2 \rightarrow R_2$

$$E_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 3 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$\rightarrow -\frac{1}{3}R_1 + \frac{1}{3}R_2 \rightarrow R_2$

from  $I_4$

$$\rightarrow E_2^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -\frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{3} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 6 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

↓

$$\begin{bmatrix} 6 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 9 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$\equiv$   
U

$$-3R3 + R1 \rightarrow R3$$

Flipsigns  
↓  
multiply all of R3 from I4 by  $\frac{1}{5}$   
-2R2 + 5R3 → R3  
inverse R3:  $\frac{1}{5}R3 + 2R2$

$$E_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & -3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$E_3^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1/3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$E_4 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & -2 & 5 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$E_4^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2/5 & -1/5 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$E_4 E_3 E_2 E_1 A = U$$

$$A = \underbrace{E_1^{-1} E_2^{-1} E_3^{-1} E_4^{-1}}_L U$$

$$A = LU$$

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -1/3 & 1/3 & 0 & 0 \\ 1/3 & 2/3 & -1/3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 5 & -2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 9 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

check:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 6 & 2 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

see below for work

Exam 1  
10/3/18

$$E_1^{-1} E_2^{-1} E_3^{-1} E_4^{-1}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -1/3 & 1/3 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1/3 & 1/3 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1/3 & 0 & -1/3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\rightarrow \begin{bmatrix} 1/3 & 0 & -1/3 & 0 \\ -1/3 & 1/3 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 2/3 & 1/3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 1/3 & -2/15 & -1/15 & 0 \\ -1/3 & 1/3 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Note:

Since we  
 $R_1 \leftrightarrow R_3$ , for  $\vec{b}$   
 we need to  $R_1 \leftrightarrow R_3$   
 for  $\vec{b}$  to get  $\vec{y}$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -1/3 & 1/3 & 0 & 0 \\ 1/3 & -2/15 & -1/15 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = L$$

2)

$L\vec{y} = \vec{b}$   
 swapped  
 $R_1$  and  $R_3$   
 of  $\vec{b}$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ -1/3 & 1/3 & 0 & 0 \\ 1/3 & -2/15 & -1/15 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \\ y_3 \\ y_4 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 15 \\ -4 \\ 4 \\ -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned} y_1 &= 15 \\ y_2 &= 3 \\ y_3 &= 9 \\ y_4 &= -1 \end{aligned}$$

3)  $U\vec{x} = \vec{y}$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 6 & 2 & 10 \\ 0 & 5 & -2 \\ 0 & 0 & 9 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \\ x_4 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 15 \\ 3 \\ 9 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= 2 \\ x_2 &= 1 \\ x_3 &= 1 \\ x_4 &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

Suppose  $E_1 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 4 & 0 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

$\rightarrow I_4 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

$4R_1 + 2R_4 \rightarrow R_4$

to get  $E_1^{-1}$ , a) opposite of coeff. of unchanging row,

b) mult by reciprocal of coeff in changing row

$E_1^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -4 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}$

$E_1^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} \end{bmatrix}$

## 2.5: Linear Transformations

### Learning Objectives

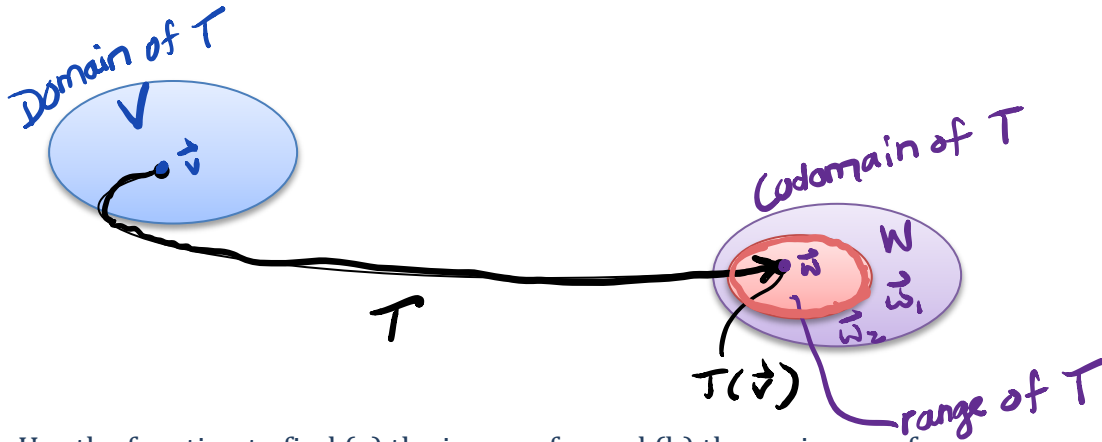
1. Find the preimage and image of a function
2. Determine if a function is a linear transformation. Write and use a stochastic matrix

domain  $\rightarrow V$  is  $\mathbb{R}$   
 codomain  $\rightarrow W$  is  $\mathbb{R}$   
 $T: V \rightarrow W$   
 $f(x) = 3x^2 - 1 \rightarrow$  range  $-1 \leq y$   
 input  $x$  output is  $y$

### IMAGES AND PREIMAGES OF FUNCTIONS

In this section we will learn about functions that map a vector space  $V$  onto a vector space  $W$ . This is denoted by  $T: V \rightarrow W$ . The standard function terminology is used for such functions.  $V$  is called the

domain of  $T$ , and  $W$  is called the codomain of  $T$ . If  $v$  is in  $V$ , and  $w$  in  $W$  such that  $T(\vec{v}) = \vec{w}$ ,  $\vec{v}$  is called the preimage of  $\vec{w}$  under  $T$ . The set of all images of vectors in  $V$  is called the range of  $T$ , and the set of all  $v$  in  $V$  such that  $T(\vec{v}) = \vec{w}$  is called the domain of  $T$ .



Example 1: Use the function to find (a) the image of  $v$  and (b) the preimage of  $w$ .

$$T(v_1, v_2) = (2v_2 - v_1, v_1, v_2), \quad v = (0, 6), \quad w = (3, 1, 2)$$

$T: \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$

a)  $T(0, 6) = (2(6) - 0, 0, 6) = (12, 0, 6)$        $(12, 0, 6)$  is the image of  $\vec{v}$  under  $T$ .

b)  $T(v_1, v_2) = (3, 1, 2) \rightarrow \vec{v} = (1, 2)$  is the preimage of  $\vec{w}$  under  $T$ .

$$\begin{aligned} 2v_2 - v_1 &= 3 \\ v_1 &= 1 \\ v_2 &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

## DEFINITION OF A LINEAR TRANSFORMATION

Let  $V$  and  $W$  be vector spaces. The function  $T : V \rightarrow W$  is called a linear transformation of  $V$  into  $W$  when the following two properties are true for all  $\mathbf{u}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  in  $V$  and any scalar  $c$ .

1.  $T(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) = T(\mathbf{u}) + T(\mathbf{v})$
2.  $T(c\mathbf{u}) = cT(\mathbf{u})$

A linear transformation is operation preserving because the same result occurs whether you perform the operations of addition and scalar multiplication before or after applying the linear transformation. Although the same symbols denote the vector operations in both  $V$  and  $W$ , you should note that the operations may be different.

Example 2: Determine whether the function is a linear transformation.

a.  $T : \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$ ,  $T(x, y, z) = (x+1, y+1, z+1)$

$$\mathbf{u} = (1, 2, 3), \mathbf{v} = (4, 5, 6)$$

$$T(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) \stackrel{?}{=} T(\mathbf{u}) + T(\mathbf{v})$$

$$T(5, 7, 9) \stackrel{?}{=} (2, 3, 4) + (5, 6, 7)$$

$$(6, 8, 10) \stackrel{?}{=} (7, 9, 11)$$

No!

$T$  is not a linear transformation

b.  $T: M_{2,2} \rightarrow R$ ,  $T(A) = a+b+c+d$

Let  $A = \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{bmatrix}$ ,  $B = \begin{bmatrix} e & f \\ g & h \end{bmatrix}$ ,  $k$  is a scalar

$$T(A+B) = T\left(\begin{bmatrix} a+e & b+f \\ c+g & d+h \end{bmatrix}\right) = (a+e) + (b+f) + (c+g) + (d+h)$$

$$\rightarrow = (a+b+c+d) + (e+f+g+h)$$

$$= T(A) + T(B) \checkmark$$

$$T(kA) = T\left[\begin{array}{cc} ka & kb \\ kc & kd \end{array}\right]$$

$$= ka + kb + kc + kd$$

$$= k(a+b+c+d)$$

$$= kT(A). \checkmark$$

yes,  $T$  is a linear transformation.

Exam 1 only  
goes through  
2.4



## THEOREM 2.15: PROPERTIES OF LINEAR TRANSFORMATIONS

Let  $T$  be a linear transformation from  $V$  into  $W$ , where  $\mathbf{u}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  are in  $V$ . Then the following properties are true.

1.  $T(\vec{0}) = \vec{0}$

2.  $T(-\vec{v}) = -T(\vec{v})$

3.  $T(\vec{u} - \vec{v}) = T(\vec{u}) - T(\vec{v})$

Proof:

$$T(\vec{u} - \vec{v}) = T(\vec{u} + (-\vec{v}))$$

$$= T(\vec{u}) + T(-\vec{v})$$

$$= T(\vec{u}) + T[-1(\vec{v})]$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= T(\vec{u}) + (-T(\vec{v})) \\ &= T(\vec{u}) - T(\vec{v}) \quad // \end{aligned}$$

4. If  $\vec{v} = c_1\vec{v}_1 + c_2\vec{v}_2 + \dots + c_n\vec{v}_n$ ,

then  $T(\vec{v}) = T(c_1\vec{v}_1 + c_2\vec{v}_2 + \dots + c_n\vec{v}_n) = c_1T(\vec{v}_1) + c_2T(\vec{v}_2) + \dots + c_nT(\vec{v}_n)$

Example 3: Let  $T: R^3 \rightarrow R^3$  be a linear transformation such that  $T(1,0,0) = (2,4,-1)$ ,

$T(0,1,0) = (1,3,-2)$ , and  $T(0,0,1) = (0,-2,2)$ . Find the indicated image.

$T(2,-1,0) = 2(1,0,0) - 1(0,1,0) + 0(0,0,1)$

$$T[(2,-1,0)] = 2T[(1,0,0)] - 1T[(0,1,0)] + 0T[(0,0,1)]$$

$$= 2(2,4,-1) - (1,3,-2) + 0(0,-2,2)$$

$$= (4,8,-2) - (1,3,-2)$$

$$= \boxed{(3,5,0)}$$

## THEOREM 2.16: THE LINEAR TRANSFORMATION GIVEN BY A MATRIX

Let  $A$  be an  $m \times n$  matrix. The function  $T$  defined by

$$T(\vec{v}) = A\vec{v}$$

is a linear transformation from  $R^n$  into  $R^m$ . In order to conform to matrix multiplication with an  $m \times n$  matrix,  $n \times 1$  matrices represent the vectors in  $R^n$  and  $m \times 1$  matrices represent the vectors in  $R^m$ .

$$\begin{array}{l}
 n \times 1 \\
 A\mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v_1 \\ \vdots \\ v_n \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11}v_1 + \cdots + a_{1n}v_n \\ \vdots \\ a_{m1}v_1 + \cdots + a_{mn}v_n \end{bmatrix} \\
 m \times n
 \end{array}$$

Example 4: Define the linear transformation  $T: R^n \rightarrow R^m$  by  $T(\mathbf{v}) = A\mathbf{v}$ . Find the dimensions of  $R^n$  and  $R^m$ .

a.  $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -2 & 4 \\ -2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$

$T: R^n \rightarrow R^m \rightarrow T: R^2 \rightarrow R^3$

$$\begin{array}{l}
 R^n = R^2 \\
 R^m = R^3
 \end{array}$$

b.  $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -2 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & -4 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

$T: R^n \rightarrow R^m$

$$\begin{array}{l}
 R^n = R^4 \\
 R^m = R^3
 \end{array}$$

Example 5: Consider the linear transformation from Example 4, part a.

a. Find  $T(2,4)$

$$\begin{array}{l}
 \vec{v} = (2,4) \\
 T: R^2 \rightarrow R^3 \\
 T(2,4) = A(2,4) \\
 = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -2 & 4 \\ -2 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}
 \end{array}$$

$$T(2,4) = (10, 12, 4)$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 10 \\ 12 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$T(\vec{v}) = (v_1 + 2v_2, -2v_1 + 4v_2, -2v_1 + 2v_2)$$

b. Find the preimage of  $(-1, 2, 2)$

$$T(\vec{v}) = A\vec{v} = \vec{w}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -2 & 4 \\ -2 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\rightarrow \left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 2 & -1 \\ -2 & 4 & 2 \\ -2 & 2 & 2 \end{array} \right] \xrightarrow{\text{ref}} \left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

$$\begin{cases} v_1 + 2v_2 = -1 \\ -2v_1 + 4v_2 = 2 \\ -2v_1 + 2v_2 = 2 \end{cases}$$

$$\vec{v} = \begin{bmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\boxed{T(-1, 0) = (-1, 2, 2)}$$

c. Explain why the vector  $(1, 1, 1)$  has no preimage under this transformation.

$$\left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 2 & 1 \\ -2 & 4 & 1 \\ -2 & 2 & 1 \end{array} \right] \xrightarrow{\text{ref}} \left[ \begin{array}{cc|c} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{array} \right]$$

$$v_1 = 1$$

$$v_2 = 0$$

$$0 = -1 \quad \underline{\underline{\text{False}}}$$

$\vec{w} = (1, 1, 1) \in$  of the codomain, but not the range of  $T$ .

# PART 2: DETERMINANTS, GENERAL VECTOR SPACES, AND MATRIX REPRESENTATIONS OF LINEAR TRANSFORMATIONS

## 3.1: THE DETERMINANT OF A MATRIX

### Learning Objectives

1. Find the determinant of a  $2 \times 2$  matrix
2. Find the minors and cofactors of a matrix
3. Use expansion by cofactors to find the determinant of a matrix
4. Find the determinant of a triangular matrix
5. Use elementary row operations to evaluate a determinant
6. Use elementary column operations to evaluate a determinant
7. Recognize conditions that yield zero determinants

Every square matrix can be associated with a real number called its determinant.

Historically, the use of determinants arose from the recognition of special patterns that occur in the solutions of systems of linear equations.

### DEFINITION OF THE DETERMINANT OF A $2 \times 2$ MATRIX

The determinant of the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix}$$

is given by  $\det(A) = \underline{a_{11}a_{22} - a_{21}a_{12}}$ .

\*\*Note: In this text,  $\det(A)$  and  $|A|$  are used interchangeably to represent the determinant of a matrix. In this context, the vertical bars are used to represent the determinant of a matrix as opposed to the absolute value.

Example 1:

- a. Find  $\det(A)$  and  $\det(B)$ .

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 4 \\ 11 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} 21 & -3 \\ -6 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\det(A) = (-1)(7) - (11)(4)$$

$$\det(B) = (21)(10) - (-6)(-3)$$

$$= \boxed{-51}$$

$$= 210 - 18 \\ = \boxed{192}$$

Check this out...

$$A^{-1} = \frac{1}{\det(A)} \begin{bmatrix} a_{22} & -a_{12} \\ -a_{21} & a_{11} \end{bmatrix}$$

the main diagonal entries are switched and the opposite sign is assigned to the other diagonal entries

b. Find  $A^{-1}$  and  $B^{-1}$

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 4 \\ 11 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A^{-1} = \frac{1}{-51} \begin{bmatrix} 7 & -4 \\ -11 & -1 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -7/51 & 4/51 \\ 11/51 & 1/51 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} 21 & -3 \\ -6 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$B^{-1} = \frac{1}{192} \begin{bmatrix} 10 & 3 \\ 6 & 21 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5/96 & 1/64 \\ 1/32 & 7/64 \end{bmatrix}$$

DEFINITION OF MINORS AND COFACTORS OF A MATRIX

If  $A$  is a square matrix, then the minor  $M_{ij}$  of the element  $a_{ij}$  is the determinant of the matrix obtained by deleting the  $i$ th row and the  $j$ th column of  $A$ . The cofactor

$C_{ij}$  is given by  $C_{ij} = (-1)^{i+j} M_{ij}$ .

Example 2: Find the minor and cofactor of  $a_{12}$  and  $b_{13}$ .

a.  $A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{bmatrix}$

$$\rightarrow M_{12} = \det \begin{bmatrix} a_{21} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{33} \end{bmatrix} = a_{21}a_{33} - a_{31}a_{23}$$

$$C_{12} = (-1)^{1+2} M_{12} = \boxed{-(a_{21}a_{33} - a_{31}a_{23})}$$

or  $\boxed{(a_{31}a_{23} - a_{21}a_{33})}$

b.  $B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

$$C_{13} = (-1)^{1+3} M_{13}$$

$$C_{13} = 1 \det \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 3 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$C_{13} = \boxed{-3}$$

## DEFINITION OF THE DETERMINANT OF A SQUARE MATRIX

If  $A$  is a square matrix of order  $n > 2$ , then the determinant of  $A$  is the sum of the entries in the first row of  $A$  multiplied by their respective cofactors. That is,

$$\det(A) = |A| = \sum_{j=1}^n a_{1j} C_{1j} = a_{11} C_{11} + a_{12} C_{12} + \dots + a_{1n} C_{1n}$$

Example 3: Confirm that, for 2x2 matrices, this definition yields  $|A| = a_{11}a_{22} - a_{21}a_{12}$ .

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \det(A) &= a_{11} C_{11} + a_{12} C_{12} \\ &= a_{11} (-1)^{1+1} a_{22} + a_{12} (-1)^{1+2} a_{21} \\ &= a_{11} a_{22} - a_{21} a_{12} \checkmark \end{aligned}$$

Example 4: Find  $|B|$ .

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \det(B) &= a_{11} C_{11} + a_{12} C_{12} + a_{13} C_{13} \\ &= 2(-1)^{1+1} \det \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} + (-1)(-1)^{1+2} \det \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix} + 4(-1)^{1+3} \det \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 3 & -2 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= 2(7) - 1(-1)(-9) + 4(-3) \\ &= 14 - 9 - 12 \\ &= \boxed{-7} \end{aligned}$$

### THEOREM 3.1: EXPANSION BY COFACTORS

If  $A$  be a square matrix of order  $n$ . Then the determinant of  $A$  is given by

$$\det(A) = |A| = \sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij} C_{ij} = \underline{a_{i1}C_{i1} + a_{i2}C_{i2} + \dots + a_{in}C_{in}} \quad (\textit{i} \text{th row expansion})$$

$$\det(A) = |A| = \sum_{i=1}^n a_{ij} C_{ij} = \underline{a_{1j}C_{1j} + a_{2j}C_{2j} + \dots + a_{nj}C_{nj}} \quad (\textit{j} \text{th column expansion})$$

Is there an easier way to complete the previous example?

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \det(B) &= 0 \det \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 4 \\ -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} + 1 \det \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 4 \\ 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix} - 3 \det \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= 0 + (-10) - 3(-1) \\ &= \boxed{-7} \end{aligned}$$

Alternative Method to evaluate the determinant of a 3 x 3 matrix: Copy the first and second columns of the matrix to form fourth and fifth columns. Then obtain the determinant by adding (or subtracting) the products of the six diagonals.

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{array}{cccccc} 2 & -1 & 4 & 2 & -1 & \\ 0 & 1 & 3 & 0 & 1 & \\ 3 & -2 & 1 & 3 & -2 & \end{array}$$

$12 + (-12) + 0 = 0$   
 $2 - 9 + 0 = -7$

$$\det(B) = \boxed{-7}$$

Bottom sum minus top sum  
 $-7 - 0 = -7$

Example 5: Find  $\det(A)$  and  $\det(B)$ .

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 2 & 6 \\ 3 & 7 & -1 & 0 \\ 6 & -1 & 2 & 5 \\ -3 & 5 & -8 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{array}{cccccc} 1 & 0 & 2 & 6 & 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 3 & 7 & -1 & 0 & 3 & 7 & -1 \\ 6 & -1 & 2 & 5 & 6 & -1 & 2 \\ -3 & 5 & -8 & 7 & -3 & 5 & -8 \end{array}$$

$$98 + 0 + 2 + 144 = 242$$

$$242 - 570 = -328$$

$$\det(A) = 1 \det \begin{bmatrix} 7 & -1 & 0 \\ -1 & 2 & 5 \\ 5 & -8 & 7 \end{bmatrix} - 0 + 2 \det \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 7 & 0 \\ 6 & -1 & 5 \\ -3 & 5 & 7 \end{bmatrix} - 6 \det \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 7 & -1 \\ 6 & -1 & 2 \\ -3 & 5 & -8 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \boxed{-2210}$$

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 7 & -2 & 11 \end{bmatrix}$$

$6(1)(11) = 66 \dots$  it turns out that the determinant of a triangular matrix is the product of the elements on the main diagonal.

$$\det(B) = 6 \det \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ -2 & 11 \end{bmatrix} - 0 + 0$$

$$= 6(11)$$

$$= \boxed{66}$$



What did you notice?

see above

### THEOREM 3.2: DETERMINANT OF A TRIANGULAR MATRIX

If  $A$  is a triangular matrix of order  $n$ , then its determinant is the product of the elements on the main diagonal. That is,  $\det(A) = |A| = a_{11}a_{22}a_{33}\cdots a_{nn}$ .

Example 6: Find the values of  $\lambda$ , for which the determinant is zero.

$$\begin{vmatrix} \lambda-1 & 1 \\ 4 & \lambda-3 \end{vmatrix} = (\lambda-1)(\lambda-3) - 4$$

$$0 = \lambda^2 - 4\lambda + 3 - 4$$

$$0 = \lambda^2 - 4\lambda - 1$$

$$\lambda_1 = 2 - \sqrt{5}, \lambda_2 = 2 + \sqrt{5}$$

$$\lambda = \frac{-(-4) \pm \sqrt{(-4)^2 - 4(1)(-1)}}{2(1)}$$

$$\lambda = \frac{4 \pm \sqrt{20}}{2}$$

$$\lambda = \frac{4 \pm 2\sqrt{5}}{2}$$

$$\lambda = 2 \pm \sqrt{5}$$

Consider the following matrix:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 3 & 4 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Find the determinant.

$$\det(A) = 1 \det \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 4 & -1 \end{bmatrix} - 0 + 1 \det \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= -6 - 10$$

$$= \boxed{-16}$$

Now let's put the matrix into row-echelon form. In other words, row reduce to an upper triangular matrix. Keep track of each elementary row operation.

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 3 & 4 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\textcircled{-5R_3 + R_2 \rightarrow R_3} \quad \leftarrow |B| = -5|A|$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 10 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & -8 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$|B| = |A| \rightarrow R_1 + R_3 \rightarrow R_3$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 3 & 4 & -1 \\ 0 & 2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$|B| = |A| \rightarrow 3R_1 + R_2 \rightarrow R_2$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} -1 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 10 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

What's the determinant of this matrix?

$$\det(B) = 80 \dots \quad 80 = -5(16) \\ \det(B) = -5\det(A)$$

Take a closer look at the determinants of the two matrices. Do you notice anything?

### THEOREM 3.3: ELEMENTARY ROW OPERATIONS AND DETERMINANTS

Let  $A$  and  $B$  be square matrices.

- When  $B$  is obtained from  $A$  by interchanging (swapping) two rows of  $A$ ,

$$|B| = -|A|$$

- When  $B$  is obtained from  $A$  by add a multiple of a row of  $A$  to another row of  $A$ ,  $|B| = |A|$ . To clarify, the "new" row is not scaled, but the row used to get the new row can be scaled. If the new row is scaled, you also use #3 below.

- When  $B$  is obtained from  $A$  by multiplying a row of  $A$  by a nonzero constant  $c$ ,  $|B| = c|A|$ .

NOTE: Theorem 3.3 remains valid when the word "column" replaces the word "row". Operations performed on columns are called elementary column operations.

Example 7: Determine which property of determinants the equation illustrates.

a. 
$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & -1 & 3 \\ 4 & 12 & 7 \\ 3 & -3 & 8 \end{vmatrix} = - \begin{vmatrix} 3 & -1 & 1 \\ 7 & 12 & 4 \\ 8 & -3 & 3 \end{vmatrix}$$

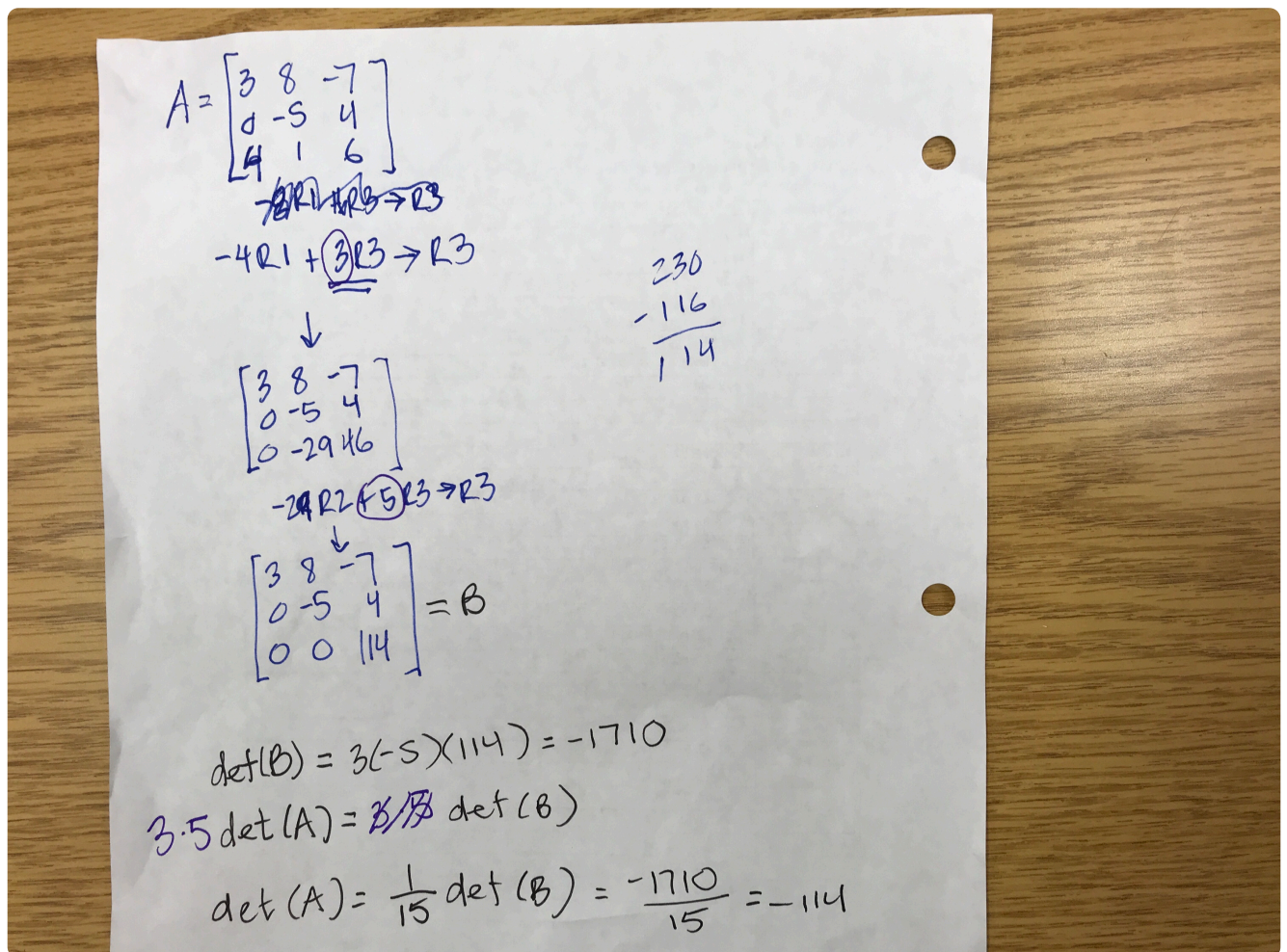
$C1 \leftrightarrow C3$

b. 
$$\begin{vmatrix} 2 & -4 & 2 \\ 6 & 10 & 2 \\ 8 & -4 & 6 \end{vmatrix} = 8 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & -2 & 1 \\ 3 & 5 & 1 \\ 4 & -2 & 3 \end{vmatrix}$$

$2^3 = 8 \rightarrow$  a 2 from each row was brought outside the matrix.

Example 8: Use elementary row or column operations to find the determinant of the matrix.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 8 & -7 \\ 0 & -5 & 4 \\ 4 & 1 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$$





### THEOREM 3.4: CONDITIONS THAT YIELD A ZERO DETERMINANT

If  $A$  is a square matrix, and any one of the following conditions is true, then  $\det(A) = 0$ .

1. An entire row (or column) consists of zeros.
2. Two rows (or columns) are equal.
3. One row (or column) is a multiple of another row (or column).

Order $n$	Cofactor Expansion		Row Reduction	
	Additions	Multiplications	Additions	Multiplications
3	5	9	5	10
5	119	205	30	45
10	3,628,799	6,235,300	285	339

Example 9: Prove the property.

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1+a & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1+b & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1+c \end{vmatrix} = abc \left( 1 + \frac{1}{a} + \frac{1}{b} + \frac{1}{c} \right), \quad a \neq 0, b \neq 0, c \neq 0.$$

Handwritten proof showing the expansion of the determinant:

$$\begin{aligned} & \begin{vmatrix} 1+a & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1+b & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1+c \end{vmatrix} \\ &= (1+a) \begin{vmatrix} 1+b & 1 \\ 1 & 1+c \end{vmatrix} - 1 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1+c \end{vmatrix} + 1 \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1+b \\ 1 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \\ &= (1+a)[(1+b)(1+c) - 1] - [(1+c) - 1] + [1 - (1+b)] \\ &= (1+a)(1+b)(1+c) - (1+a) - c - b \\ &= (1+a+b+ab)(1+c) - 1 - a - c - b \\ &= 1+c + a+ac + b+bc + ab+abc - 1 - a - b - c \\ &= abc \left( \frac{1}{a} + \frac{1}{b} + \frac{1}{c} + 1 \right), \quad a, b, c \neq 0 \end{aligned}$$

## 3.2: PROPERTIES OF DETERMINANTS

### Learning Objectives

1. Find the determinant of a matrix product and a scalar multiple of a matrix
2. Find the determinant of an inverse matrix and recognize equivalent conditions for a nonsingular matrix
3. Find the determinant of the transpose of a matrix
4. Use Cramer's Rule to solve a system of linear equations
5. Use determinants to find area, volume, and equations of lines and planes

Example 1: Find  $|A|$ ,  $|B|$ ,  $|A||B|$ ,  $|A+B|$ ,  $|A|+|B|$  and  $|AB|$ .

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 3 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Find  $|A|$ ,  $|B|$ ,  $|A||B|$ ,  $|AB|$ ,  $|A|+|B|$ ,  $|A+B|$

$A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 2 \\ 3 & 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$      $B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$

a)  $\det(A) = 3 \det \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix} - 1 \det \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 3 & 0 \end{bmatrix} + 0$   
 $= 3(4-1) - (6-1)$   
 $= 15 - 5$   
 $= 10$

b)  $\det(B) = 2 \det \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} - 0 + 3 \det \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 \\ 1 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$   
 $= 2(-1) + 3(-1)$   
 $= -7$

c)  $\det(A) \det(B) = (10)(-7) = -70$

d)  $\det(AB) = \det \begin{bmatrix} 9 & -3 & 19 \\ 3 & -6 & 3 \\ 6 & -2 & 15 \end{bmatrix}$   
 $= 6 \det \begin{bmatrix} -3 & 19 \\ -6 & 3 \end{bmatrix} - 2 \det \begin{bmatrix} 9 & 19 \\ 3 & 3 \end{bmatrix} + 15 \det \begin{bmatrix} 9 & -3 \\ 8 & -6 \end{bmatrix}$   
 $= 6(-9+114) + 2(-27-152) + 15(-54+24)$   
 $= 630 - 280 - 450$   
 $= -70$  So...  $\det(AB) = \det(A)\det(B)$  " (3)

e)  $\det(A) + \det(B) = 10 + (-7) = 3$

f)  $\det(A+B) = \det \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 1 & 5 \\ 1 & 0 & 5 \\ 6 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$   
 $= -1 \det \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 5 \\ 6 & 1 \end{bmatrix} + 0 + 1 \det \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 5 \\ 1 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$   
 $= +29 + 20$   
 $= 49$  So...  $\det(A+B) \neq \det(A) + \det(B)$

So... Theorem 3.5  
 If  $A$  and  $B$  are matrices of order  $n$ ,  
 $\det(AB) = \det(A)\det(B)$ .

### THEOREM 3.5: DETERMINANT OF A MATRIX PRODUCT

If  $A$  and  $B$  are square matrices of order  $n$ , then

$$\det(AB) = \det(A)\det(B)$$

Example 2: Find  $|3A|$  and  $|3B|$ .

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 3 & 10 \end{bmatrix}$$

$2 \times 2$

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & 3 \\ 3 & -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$3 \times 3$

$$|A| = 13$$

$$|3A| = \begin{vmatrix} 3 & -3 \\ 9 & 30 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 117$$

$$= 3 \cdot 3 \cdot 13$$

→ maybe  $|3A|$   
yep!  $= 3^2 |A|$

$$|B| = -7$$

Is  $|3B| = 3^3 \cdot (-7)$

$$|3B| = \begin{vmatrix} 6 & -3 & 12 \\ 0 & 3 & 9 \\ 9 & -6 & 3 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 0 + 3 \begin{vmatrix} 6 & 12 \\ 9 & 3 \end{vmatrix} - 9 \begin{vmatrix} 6 & -3 \\ 9 & -6 \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= 3(18 - 108) - 9(-36 + 27)$$

$$= -270 + 81$$

$$= -189$$

$$= -3 \cdot 3 \cdot 3 \cdot 7 = 3(-7)$$

### THEOREM 3.6: DETERMINANT OF A SCALAR MULTIPLE OF A MATRIX

If  $A$  is a square matrix of order  $n$  and  $c$  is a scalar, then the determinant of  $|cA|$  is

$$c^n \det(A)$$

Proof:

$$\text{Let } A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & a_{n2} & \cdots & a_{nn} \end{bmatrix},$$

$$cA = \begin{bmatrix} ca_{11} & ca_{12} & \cdots & ca_{1n} \\ ca_{21} & ca_{22} & \cdots & ca_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ ca_{n1} & ca_{n2} & \cdots & ca_{nn} \end{bmatrix}, a_{ij} \in \mathbb{R}$$

$1 \leq i \leq n$   
and  $1 \leq j \leq n$ .

$$\det(A) = \sum_{j=1}^n a_{1j} C_{1j}$$

$$\det(cA) = \sum_{j=1}^n ca_{1j} c^{n-1} C_{1j} = ca_{11} c^{n-1} C_{11} + ca_{12} c^{n-1} C_{12} + \cdots + ca_{1n} c^{n-1} C_{1n}$$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^n c^n a_{1j} C_{1j}$$

$$= c^n \det(A)$$

$$= c^n \sum a_{ij} C_{ij}$$

Example 3: Find  $A^{-1}$ ,  $|A|$ ,  $|A^{-1}|$ ,  $B^{-1}$ ,  $|B^{-1}|$ , and  $|B|$ .

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -3 & 6 \\ -2 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 2 \\ 11 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$|A| = -12 + 12 = 0$$

SO  $A$  is singular,  $A^{-1}$  DNE

$$|B| = 35 - 22 = 13$$

$$B^{-1} = \frac{1}{|B|} \begin{bmatrix} 7 & -2 \\ -11 & 5 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 7/13 & -2/13 \\ -11/13 & 5/13 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$|B^{-1}| = \frac{35}{169} - \frac{22}{169} = \frac{13}{169} = \frac{1}{13}$$

$$\downarrow \\ \frac{1}{\det(B)}$$

### THEOREM 3.7: DETERMINANT OF AN INVERTIBLE MATRIX

A square matrix  $A$  is invertible (nonsingular) if and only if

$$\det(A) \neq 0$$

Example 4: Find  $|A|$  and  $|A^{-1}|$ .

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -3 & 3 \\ -2 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\det(A) = -3 + 6 = 3$$

$$\det(A^{-1}) = \frac{1}{\det(A)} = \frac{1}{3}$$



### THEOREM 3.8: DETERMINANT OF AN INVERSE MATRIX

If  $A$  is an  $n \times n$  invertible matrix, then

$$\det(A^{-1}) = \frac{1}{\det(A)}$$

Proof:

Since  $A$  is invertible,  $\exists A^{-1} \Rightarrow AA^{-1} = I_n = A^{-1}A$ , and  $\det(A) \neq 0$ . [Thm 3.7]  $\det(AA^{-1}) = \det(A)\det(A^{-1})$ , and  $\det(AA^{-1}) = \det(I_n) = 1$ . So  $\det(A)\det(A^{-1}) = 1$ , [Thm 3.5] and  $\det(A^{-1}) = \frac{1}{\det(A)}$ . //

### EQUIVALENT CONDITIONS FOR A NONSINGULAR MATRIX

If  $A$  is an  $n \times n$  matrix, then the following statements are equivalent.

1.  $A$  is invertible.
2.  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$  has a unique solution for every  $n \times 1$  column matrix.
3.  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{0}$  has only the trivial solution.
4.  $A$  is row-equivalent to  $I_n$ .
5.  $A$  can be written as the product of elementary matrices.
6.  $\det(A) \neq 0$ .

Example 5: Determine if the system of linear equations has a unique solution.

$$\begin{aligned}x_1 + x_2 - x_3 &= 4 \\2x_1 - x_2 - x_3 &= 6 \\3x_1 - 2x_2 + 2x_3 &= 0\end{aligned}$$

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & -1 & -1 \\ 3 & -2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$\det(A) = -10 \neq 0$ ,  $\therefore \exists$  a unique solution to this system.



Example 6: Find  $|A|$  and  $|A^T|$ .

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 7 & 12 \\ 2 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\det(A) = -14 - 24 = -38$$

$$A^T = \begin{bmatrix} 7 & 2 \\ 12 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\det(A^T) = -14 - 24 = -38$$

THEOREM 3.9: DETERMINANT OF A TRANSPOSE

If  $A$  is a square matrix, then

$$\det(A^T) = \det(A)$$

Example 7: Solve the system of linear equations. Assume that  $a_{11}a_{22} - a_{21}a_{12} \neq 0$ .

$$a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 = b_1 \quad (A)$$

$$a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 = b_2 \quad (B)$$

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix} \quad \vec{b} = \begin{bmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

1) Isolate  $x_1$  from A and then sub. into B.

$$a) \quad a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 = b_1$$

$$a_{11}x_1 = b_1 - a_{12}x_2$$

$$x_1 = \frac{b_1 - a_{12}x_2}{a_{11}}$$

$$b) \quad a_{21} \left( \frac{b_1 - a_{12}x_2}{a_{11}} \right) + a_{22}x_2 = b_2$$

$$\frac{a_{21}b_1 - a_{21}a_{12}x_2}{a_{11}} + \frac{a_{11}a_{22}x_2}{a_{11}} = b_2$$

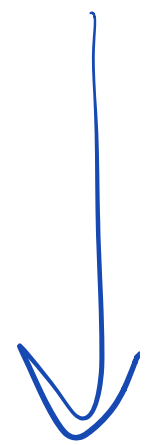
$$\frac{a_{21}b_1 - a_{21}a_{12}x_2 + a_{11}a_{22}x_2}{a_{11}} = b_2$$

$$a_{21}b_1 - a_{21}a_{12}x_2 + a_{11}a_{22}x_2 = a_{11}b_2$$

$$\begin{aligned} x_2(a_{11}a_{22} - a_{21}a_{12}) &= a_{11}b_2 - a_{21}b_1 \\ x_2 &= \frac{a_{11}b_2 - a_{21}b_1}{a_{11}a_{22} - a_{21}a_{12}} \end{aligned}$$

2) Sub  $x_2$  into eq. A

$$\left( \frac{a_{11}a_{22} - a_{21}a_{12}}{a_{11}a_{22} - a_{21}a_{12}} \right) (a_{11}x_1) + a_{12} \left[ \frac{a_{11}b_2 - a_{21}b_1}{a_{11}a_{22} - a_{21}a_{12}} \right] = b_1$$



$$\frac{a_{11}^2 a_{22} x_1 - a_{21} a_{12} a_{11} x_1 + a_{12} a_{11} b_2 - a_{21} a_{12} b_1}{a_{11} a_{22} - a_{21} a_{12}} = b_1$$

$$x_1 (a_{11}^2 a_{22} - a_{21} a_{12} a_{11}) + a_{12} a_{11} b_2 - a_{21} a_{12} b_1 = b_1 (a_{11} a_{22} - a_{21} a_{12})$$

$$x_1 = \frac{\cancel{a_{21} a_{12} b_1} + b_1 a_{11} a_{22} - \cancel{b_1 a_{21} a_{12}} - a_{11} a_{12} b_2}{a_{11} (a_{11} a_{22} - a_{21} a_{12})}$$

$$x_1 = \frac{\cancel{a_{11}} (b_1 a_{22} - a_{12} b_2)}{\cancel{a_{11}} (a_{11} a_{22} - a_{21} a_{12})}$$

$$x_1 = \frac{b_1 a_{22} - a_{12} b_2}{a_{11} a_{22} - a_{21} a_{12}}$$

$$x_1 = \frac{\det(A_1)}{\det(A)}$$

$$x_2 = \frac{a_{11} b_2 - a_{21} b_1}{a_{11} a_{22} - a_{21} a_{12}}$$

$$x_2 = \frac{\det(A_2)}{\det(A)}$$

$$A_1 = \begin{bmatrix} b_1 & a_{12} \\ b_2 & a_{22} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A_2 = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & b_1 \\ a_{21} & b_2 \end{bmatrix}$$

### THEOREM 3.10: CRAMER'S RULE

If a system of  $n$  linear equations in  $n$  variables has a coefficient matrix  $A$  with a nonzero determinant  $|A|$ , then the solution of the system is

$$x_1 = \frac{\det(A_1)}{\det(A)}, x_2 = \frac{\det(A_2)}{\det(A)}, \dots, x_n = \frac{\det(A_n)}{\det(A)}$$

Where the  $j$ th column of  $A_j$  is the column of constants in the system of equations.

Example 8: If possible, use Cramer's Rule to solve the system.

a.

$$-x_1 - 2x_2 = 7$$

$$2x_1 + 4x_2 = 11$$

*Cramer's rule does not apply*

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & -2 \\ 2 & 4 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\det(A) = -4 + 4 = 0$$

b.

$$-8x_1 + 7x_2 - 10x_3 = -151$$

$$12x_1 + 3x_2 - 5x_3 = 86$$

$$15x_1 - 9x_2 + 2x_3 = 187$$

$$\vec{b} = \begin{bmatrix} -151 \\ 86 \\ 187 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$x_1 = \frac{\det(A_1)}{\det(A)} = \frac{11490}{1149} = 10$$

$$x_2 = \frac{\det(A_2)}{\det(A)} = \frac{-3447}{1149} = -3$$

$$x_3 = \frac{\det(A_3)}{\det(A)} = \frac{5745}{1149} = 5$$

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -8 & 7 & -10 \\ 12 & 3 & -5 \\ 15 & -9 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\det(A) = 1149$$

$$A_1 = \begin{bmatrix} -151 & 7 & -10 \\ 86 & 3 & -5 \\ 187 & -9 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -8 & -151 & -10 \\ 12 & 86 & -5 \\ 15 & 187 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A_3 = \begin{bmatrix} -8 & 7 & -151 \\ 12 & 3 & 86 \\ 15 & -9 & 187 \end{bmatrix}$$

$\{(10, -3, 5)\}$  consistent

## AREA OF A TRIANGLE IN THE $xy$ -PLANE

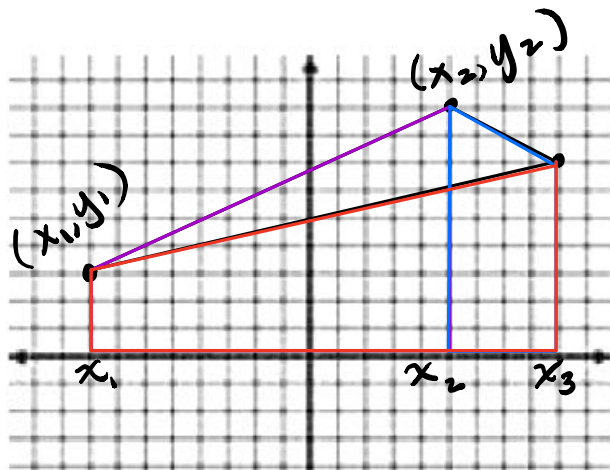
The area of a triangle with vertices  $(x_1, y_1)$ ,  $(x_2, y_2)$ , and  $(x_3, y_3)$  is  $\pm$

$$\text{Area} = \pm \frac{1}{2} \det \begin{bmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & 1 \\ x_2 & y_2 & 1 \\ x_3 & y_3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$1(x_2y_3 - y_2x_3) - 1(x_1y_3 - y_1x_3) + 1(x_1y_2 - y_1x_2)$$

where the sign ( $\pm$ ) is chosen to give positive area.

Proof:



$$\text{Area}_{\text{trap}} = \frac{b_1 + b_2}{2} h$$

$$\text{Area}_{\text{trap1}} = \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2} (x_2 - x_1)$$

$$\text{Area}_{\text{trap2}} = \frac{y_2 + y_3}{2} (x_3 - x_2)$$

$$\text{Area}_{\text{trap3}} = \frac{y_1 + y_3}{2} (x_3 - x_1)$$

$$A_{\Delta} = \frac{1}{2} \left[ (x_2 - x_1)(y_1 + y_2) + (x_3 - x_2)(y_2 + y_3) - (x_3 - x_1)(y_1 + y_3) \right]$$

Example 9: Find the area of the triangle whose vertices are  $(1, -1)$ ,  $(3, -5)$ , and  $(0, -2)$ .

### TEST FOR COLLINEAR POINTS IN THE $xy$ -PLANE

Three points  $(x_1, y_1)$ ,  $(x_2, y_2)$ , and  $(x_3, y_3)$  are collinear if and only if

$$\det \begin{bmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & 1 \\ x_2 & y_2 & 1 \\ x_3 & y_3 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = 0$$

### TWO-POINT FORM OF THE EQUATION OF A LINE

An equation of the line passing through the distinct points  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$  is given by

$$\det \begin{bmatrix} x & y & 1 \\ x_1 & y_1 & 1 \\ x_2 & y_2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = 0$$

### VOLUME OF A TETRAHEDRON

The volume of a tetrahedron with vertices  $(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ ,  $(x_2, y_2, z_2)$ ,  $(x_3, y_3, z_3)$ , and  $(x_4, y_4, z_4)$  is

$$V = \pm \frac{1}{6} \det \begin{bmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ x_2 & y_2 & z_2 & 1 \\ x_3 & y_3 & z_3 & 1 \\ x_4 & y_4 & z_4 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

where the sign  $(\pm)$  is chosen to give positive volume.

Example 11: Find the volume of the tetrahedron with vertices  $(1,1,1)$ ,  $(0,0,0)$ ,  $(2,1,-1)$ , and  $(-1,1,2)$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 V &= \pm \frac{1}{6} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix} \\
 &= \pm \frac{1}{6} \det \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 \\ -1 & 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \\
 &= \pm \frac{1}{6} \left[ -(4-1) + (2+1) - (-1-2) \right] \\
 &= \pm \frac{1}{6} (3)
 \end{aligned}$$

=  $\frac{1}{2}$  cubic unit

### TEST FOR COPLANAR POINTS IN SPACE

Four points,  $(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ ,  $(x_2, y_2, z_2)$ ,  $(x_3, y_3, z_3)$ , and  $(x_4, y_4, z_4)$  are coplanar if and only if

$$\det \begin{bmatrix} x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ x_2 & y_2 & z_2 & 1 \\ x_3 & y_3 & z_3 & 1 \\ x_4 & y_4 & z_4 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = 0$$

### THREE-POINT FORM OF THE EQUATION OF A LINE

An equation of the plane passing through the distinct points  $(x_1, y_1, z_1)$ ,  $(x_2, y_2, z_2)$ , and  $(x_3, y_3, z_3)$  is given by

$$\det \begin{bmatrix} x & y & z & 1 \\ x_1 & y_1 & z_1 & 1 \\ x_2 & y_2 & z_2 & 1 \\ x_3 & y_3 & z_3 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = 0$$

### 3.3: GENERAL VECTOR SPACES

#### Learning Objectives:

1. Determine whether a set of vectors is a vector space
2. Determine if a subset of a known vector space  $V$  is a subspace of  $V$
3. Write a vector as a linear combination of other vectors
4. Recognize bases in the vector spaces  $R^n$ ,  $P_n$ , and  $M_{m,n}$
5. Determine whether a set  $S$  of vectors in a vector space  $V$  is a basis for  $V$
6. Find the dimension of a vector space

#### DEFINITION OF A VECTOR SPACE

Let  $V$  be a set on which two operations (vector addition and scalar multiplication) are defined. If the listed axioms are satisfied for every  $\mathbf{u}$ ,  $\mathbf{v}$ , and  $\mathbf{w}$  in  $V$  and every scalar (real number)  $c$  and  $d$ , then  $V$  is called a **vector space**.

##### Addition

1.  $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}$  is in  $V$ . closure under addition
2.  $\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v} = \underline{\vec{v} + \vec{u}}$  commutative property
3.  $\mathbf{u} + (\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}) = \underline{(\vec{u} + \vec{v}) + \vec{w}}$  associative property
4.  $V$  has a zero vector  $\vec{0}$  such that additive identity  
for every  $\vec{v}$  in  $V$ ,  $\vec{v} + \vec{0} = \vec{v}$
5. For every  $\vec{v}$  in  $V$ , there is a vector in  $V$  additive inverse  
denoted by  $-\vec{v}$  such that  $\vec{v} + (-\vec{v}) = \vec{0}$

##### Scalar Multiplication

6.  $c\mathbf{u}$  is in  $V$ . closure under scalar mult.
7.  $c(\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}) = \underline{c\vec{u} + c\vec{v}}$  distributive property
8.  $(c + d)\mathbf{u} = \underline{c\vec{u} + d\vec{u}}$  distributive property
9.  $c(d\mathbf{u}) = \underline{(cd)\vec{u}}$  associative property
10.  $1(\mathbf{u}) = \underline{\vec{u}}$  scal. multiplicative identity

### THEOREM 3.11: PROPERTIES OF SCALAR MULTIPLICATION

Let  $\mathbf{v}$  be any element of a vector space  $V$ , and let  $c$  be any scalar. Then the following properties are true.

1.  $0\mathbf{v} = \vec{0}$

3. If  $c\vec{v} = \vec{0}$ , then  $c = 0$  or  $\vec{v} = \vec{0}$ .

2.  $c\vec{0} = \vec{0}$

4.  $(-1)\mathbf{v} = -\vec{v}$

Example 1: Determine whether the set, together with the indicated operations, is a vector space. If it is not, then identify at least one of the ten vector space axioms that fails.

a. The set of all  $2 \times 2$  matrices of the form  $S = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} a & b \\ c & 1 \end{bmatrix} : a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{R} \right\}$ .

$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 5 \\ 6 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \in S$  and  $A+B = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 7 \\ 9 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \notin S$ .

$S$  is not closed under addition.

b. The set of all  $2 \times 2$  nonsingular matrices with the standard operations.

Axiom 1:  $A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ 3 & 4 \end{bmatrix}, -A = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & -2 \\ -3 & -4 \end{bmatrix}$  are nonsingular [nonzero determinants]  
 Axiom 4:  $A+(-A) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$  which is singular so set isn't closed under +.  
 Also,  $\vec{0} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$  is not in this set, so  $\exists \vec{0} \ni A + \vec{0} = A$ .

### IMPORTANT VECTOR SPACES CONTINUED

$C(-\infty, \infty)$  = the set of all continuous functions defined on the real number line.

$C[a, b]$  = the set of all continuous functions defined on a closed interval  $[a, b]$ .

$P$  = the set of all polynomials.

$P_n$  = the set of all polynomials of degree  $\leq n$ .

$M_{m,n}$  = the set of all  $m \times n$  matrices.

$M_{n,n}$  = the set of all  $n \times n$  square matrices.



Example 2: Describe the zero vector (the additive identity) of the vector space.

a.  $C(-\infty, \infty)$

$$\vec{0}: f(x) = 0 \\ [y=0]$$

b.  $M_{1,4}$

$$\vec{0} = [0 \ 0 \ 0 \ 0]$$

Example 3: Describe the additive inverse of a vector in the vector space.

a.  $C(-\infty, \infty)$

$$\boxed{-f(x)}$$

b.  $M_{1,4}$

$$\text{If } A = [a_{11} \ a_{12} \ a_{13} \ a_{14}] \\ \boxed{-A = [-a_{11} \ -a_{12} \ -a_{13} \ -a_{14}]}$$

Example 4: Determine whether the set of continuous functions,  $C(-\infty, \infty)$  is a vector space.

Let  $f, g, h \in C(-\infty, \infty)$  and  $c, d \in \mathbb{R}$ .

1. Closure under addition.

$$f(x) + g(x) = (f+g)(x) \in C(-\infty, \infty) \checkmark$$

2. Commutativity under addition.

$$\begin{aligned} (f+g)(x) &= f(x) + g(x) \\ &= g(x) + f(x) \\ &= (g+f)(x) \checkmark \end{aligned}$$

3. Associativity under addition.

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) + (g+h)(x) &= f(x) + [g(x) + h(x)] \\ &= [f(x) + g(x)] + h(x) \\ &= (f+g)(x) + h(x) \checkmark \end{aligned}$$

4. Additive identity.

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) + \vec{0} &= f(x) + 0 \\ &= f(x) \checkmark \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} c\vec{u} &= c(u_1, u_2) \\ &= (cu_1, cu_2) \end{aligned}$$

5. Additive inverse.

$$\begin{aligned} [f + (-f)](x) &= f(x) + [-f(x)] \\ &= 0 \\ &= \vec{0} \checkmark \end{aligned}$$

6. Closure under scalar multiplication.

$$cf(x) = \underline{(cf)}(x) \in C(-\infty, \infty) \checkmark$$

7. Distributivity under scalar multiplication (2 vectors and 1 scalar).

$$\begin{aligned} c[f+g](x) &= c[f(x) + g(x)] \\ &= cf(x) + cg(x) \checkmark \end{aligned}$$

8. Distributivity under scalar multiplication (2 scalars and 1 vector).

$$\begin{aligned} [(c+d)f](x) &= (c+d)f(x) \\ &= cf(x) + df(x) \checkmark \end{aligned}$$

9. Associativity under scalar multiplication.

$$\begin{aligned} [c(df)](x) &= c[df](x) \\ &= c(df(x)) \\ &= (cd)f(x) \checkmark \end{aligned}$$

10. Scalar multiplicative identity.

$$\begin{aligned} (1f)(x) &= 1f(x) \\ &= f(x) \checkmark \end{aligned}$$

Conclusion?  $C(-\infty, \infty)$  is a vector space.

Example 5: Determine whether the set  $W$  is a subspace of the vector space  $V$  with the standard operations of addition and scalar multiplication.

a.  $V: C[-1,1]$

$W$ : The set of all functions that are differentiable on  $[-1,1]$

$W$  is a nonempty subset of  $V$  [diff.  $\rightarrow$  continuity].

Let  $f$  and  $g \in W$ , and let  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ .

$$\frac{d}{dx}[f(x)] + \frac{d}{dx}[g(x)] = \frac{d}{dx}[f(x) + g(x)] = \frac{d}{dx}[(f+g)(x)] \checkmark$$

$$c \frac{d}{dx}f(x) = \frac{d}{dx}[cf(x)] \checkmark$$

$\therefore W$  is a subspace of  $V$ .

b.  $V: C(-\infty, \infty)$

$W$ : The set of all negative functions:  $f(x) < 0$ .

$$f(x) = -x^2 < 0$$

$$c = -5$$

$$cf(x) = -5(-x^2) = 5x^2 > 0$$

$W$  is not closed under scalar mult.

c.  $V: C(-\infty, \infty)$

$W$ : The set of all odd functions:  $f(-x) = -f(x)$ .

Checking

$$f(x) = x$$

$$g(x) = \sin x$$

$$(f+g)(-x) \stackrel{?}{=} -(f+g)(x)$$

$$-x + \sin(-x) \stackrel{?}{=} -(x + \sin x)$$

$$-(x + \sin x) = -(x + \sin x) \checkmark$$

$W$  is a nonempty subset of  $V$ .

Let  $f, g$  be odd functions, and let  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} (f+g)(x) &= f(-x) + g(-x) \\ &= -f(x) + (-g(x)) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} (cf)(-x) &= cf(-x) \\ &= c[-f(x)] \\ &= -cf(x) \checkmark \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= -(f(x) + g(x)) \\ &= -(f+g)(x) \checkmark \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore W$  is subspace of  $V$ .

d.  $V: \{M_{n,n} : n \in \mathbb{Z}^+\}$

$W$ : The set of all  $n \times n$  diagonal matrices.

$W$  is a nonempty subset of  $V$ . Let  $A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & a_{22} & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \dots & 0 & a_{nn} \end{bmatrix}$ ,

$B = \begin{bmatrix} b_{11} & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & b_{22} & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \dots & 0 & b_{nn} \end{bmatrix}$ ,  $c \in \mathbb{R}$ .

$A+B = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11}+b_{11} & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & a_{22}+b_{22} & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \dots & 0 & a_{nn}+b_{nn} \end{bmatrix} \in W$

$cA = c \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & a_{22} & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \dots & 0 & a_{nn} \end{bmatrix}$   
 $= \begin{bmatrix} ca_{11} & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & ca_{22} & \dots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \dots & 0 & ca_{nn} \end{bmatrix}$

e.  $W$ : The set of all  $n \times n$  matrices whose trace is nonzero.

$V: \{M_{n,n} : n \in \mathbb{Z}^+\}$

$0 \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 4 & 5 & 6 \\ 7 & 8 & 9 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \leftarrow \text{trace} = 0$

↑

$\text{trace} = 1+5+9 = 15 \neq 0$

$\therefore W \in W$   
 $W$  is a subspace of  $V$

not closed under scal. mult.

f.  $V: C(-\infty, \infty)$

$W: \{ax+b : a, b \in \mathbb{R}, a \neq 0\}$

$f(x) = 2x+5$

$g(x) = -2x-1$

$(f+g)(x) = (2x+5) + (-2x-1)$   
 $= 0x+4 \notin W$

not closed under addition

g.  $V: \{M_{m,n} : m, n \in \mathbb{Z}^+\}$

$W: \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} a & 0 & \sqrt{a} \end{bmatrix}^T : a \in \mathbb{R}, a \geq 0 \right\}$

$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & \sqrt{2} \end{bmatrix}^T \in W$

$B = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 0 & \sqrt{3} \end{bmatrix}^T$

$A + B = \begin{bmatrix} 5 & 0 & \sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3} \end{bmatrix}$

$\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{3} \neq \sqrt{5}!$

not closed under addition.

Example 6: For the matrices

$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ 4 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$  and  $B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 5 \\ 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$

in  $M_{2,2}$ , determine whether the given matrix is a linear combination of  $A$  and  $B$ .

$\begin{bmatrix} 6 & -19 \\ 10 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$

$c_1 \vec{v}_1 + c_2 \vec{v}_2 = \vec{z}$

$c_1 A + c_2 B = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & -19 \\ 10 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$

$\begin{bmatrix} 2c_1 & -3c_1 \\ 4c_1 & 1c_1 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 0c_2 & 5c_2 \\ 1c_2 & -2c_2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & -19 \\ 10 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$

$$\left. \begin{aligned} 2c_1 &= 6 \\ -3c_1 + 5c_2 &= -19 \\ 4c_1 + c_2 &= 10 \\ c_1 - 2c_2 &= 7 \end{aligned} \right\} \begin{aligned} c_1 &= 3 \\ -3(3) + 5c_2 &= -19 \\ c_2 &= -2 \end{aligned}$$

$3 \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -3 \\ 4 & 1 \end{bmatrix} + (-2) \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 5 \\ 1 & -2 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & -19 \\ 10 & 7 \end{bmatrix}$  yes

Consider  $P_n(x) = \frac{a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + a_3x^3 + \dots + a_nx^n}{}$

$$P_2(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2$$

Example 7: Determine whether the set of vectors in  $P_2$  is linearly independent or linearly dependent.

$$S = \{ \underbrace{x^2}_{\vec{v}_1}, \underbrace{x^2+1}_{\vec{v}_2} \}$$

$$c_1\vec{v}_1 + c_2\vec{v}_2 = \vec{0}$$

$$c_1x^2 + c_2(x^2+1) = 0 + 0x + 0x^2$$

$$c_2 + (c_1 + c_2)x^2 = 0 + 0x^2$$

$S$  is linearly independent

$$c_2 = 0$$

$$c_1 + c_2 = 0 \rightarrow c_1 = 0$$

Example 8: Determine whether the set of vectors in  $M_{2,2}$  is linearly independent or linearly dependent.

$$S = \left\{ \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ -3 & 1 \end{bmatrix}}_{\vec{v}_1}, \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} -4 & -1 \\ 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix}}_{\vec{v}_2}, \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} -8 & -3 \\ -6 & 17 \end{bmatrix}}_{\vec{v}_3} \right\}$$

$$c_1\vec{v}_1 + c_2\vec{v}_2 + c_3\vec{v}_3 = \vec{0}$$

$$c_1 \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ -3 & 1 \end{bmatrix} + c_2 \begin{bmatrix} -4 & -1 \\ 0 & 5 \end{bmatrix} + c_3 \begin{bmatrix} -8 & -3 \\ -6 & 17 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$2c_1 - 4c_2 - 8c_3 = 0 \rightarrow 2(-2c_3) - 4(-3c_3) - 8c_3 = 0 \rightarrow c_3 = 1$$

$$-c_2 - 3c_3 = 0 \rightarrow c_2 = -3c_3 = -3$$

$$-3c_1 - 6c_3 = 0 \rightarrow c_1 = -2c_3 = -2$$

$$c_1 + 5c_2 - 17c_3 = 0$$

Since  $\exists$  a nontrivial solution to this equation,  $S$  is linearly dependent.

Example 9: Write the standard basis for the vector space.

a.  $M_{3,2}$

$$\text{Standard basis for } M_{3,2} = \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

b.  $P_3 = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + a_3x^3$

$$\text{Standard basis} = \{1, x, x^2, x^3\}$$

$$\begin{cases} a_0=1: 1+0x+0x^2+0x^3 \\ a_1=1: 0+1x+0x^2+0x^3 \\ a_2=1: 0+0x+1x^2+0x^3 \\ a_3=1: 0+0x+0x^2+1x^3 \end{cases}$$

Example 10: Determine whether  $S$  is a basis for the indicated vector space.

$$S = \{4t-t^2, 5+t^3, 3t+5, 2t^3-3t^2\} \text{ for } P_3$$

$\vec{v}_1$     $\vec{v}_2$     $\vec{v}_3$     $\vec{v}_4$

$$\dim(P_3) = 4$$

Check for lin. ind:

$$c_1\vec{v}_1 + c_2\vec{v}_2 + c_3\vec{v}_3 + c_4\vec{v}_4 = \vec{0}$$

$$c_1(4t-t^2) + c_2(5+t^3) + c_3(3t+5) + c_4(2t^3-3t^2) = 0$$

$$4c_1t - c_1t^2 + 5c_2 + c_2t^3 + 3c_3t + 5c_3 + 2c_4t^3 - 3c_4t^2 = 0 + 0t + 0t^2 + 0t^3$$

$$(5c_2 + 5c_3) + (4c_1 + 3c_3)t + (-c_1 - 3c_4)t^2 + (c_2 + 2c_4)t^3 = 0 + 0t + 0t^2 + 0t^3$$

$$\begin{cases} 5c_2 + 5c_3 = 0 \\ 4c_1 + 3c_3 = 0 \\ -c_1 - 3c_4 = 0 \\ c_2 + 2c_4 = 0 \end{cases} \left\{ A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 5 & 5 & 0 \\ 4 & 0 & 3 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & -3 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \right.$$

$$\det(A) = 30 \neq 0$$

so  $\exists$  a unique solution to the

Since  $S$  spans  $P_3$ ,  $\dim(P_3) = 4$ , and  $S$  has 4 vectors,  $S$  is a basis for  $P_3$ .

system, so  $S$  spans  $P_3$ .



Example 11: Find a basis for the vector space of all  $3 \times 3$  symmetric matrices. What is the dimension of this vector space?

- 1) Hmm... the easiest basis to find is the standard basis.
- 2) What does a  $3 \times 3$  symmetric matrix look like in general?

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{12} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{13} & a_{23} & a_{33} \end{bmatrix}$$

Standard basis for  $3 \times 3$  symmetric matrices

$$\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

dimension for this space = 6

Example 11: Let  $T$  be the linear transformation from  $P_2$  into  $\mathbb{R}$  given by the integral  $T(p) = \int_0^1 p(x) dx$ .

Find the preimage of 1. That is, find the polynomial function(s) of degree 2 or less such that  $T(p) = 1$ .

$$1) T: P_2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$$

$$T(P_2) = \mathbb{R}$$

$$\int_0^1 p(x) dx = 1$$

$$\int_0^1 [a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2] dx = 1$$

$$\left( a_0x + \frac{1}{2}a_1x^2 + \frac{1}{3}a_2x^3 \right) \Big|_{x=0}^{x=1} = 1$$

$$(a_0 + \frac{1}{2}a_1 + \frac{1}{3}a_2) - (0) = 1$$

$$a_0 = 1 - \frac{1}{2}a_1 - \frac{1}{3}a_2, \text{ Let } a_1 = 2a \text{ and } a_2 = 3b$$

$$a_0 = 1 - a - b$$

$$2) P_2(x) = a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2$$

$$P(x) = \left\{ (1-a-b) + 2ax + 3bx^2 : a, b \in \mathbb{R} \right\}$$

### 3.4: RANK/NULLITY OF A MATRIX, SYSTEMS OF LINEAR EQUATIONS. AND COORDINATE VECTORS

#### Learning Objectives:

1. Find a basis for the row space, a basis for the column space, and the rank of a matrix
2. Find the nullspace of a matrix
3. Find a coordinate matrix relative to a basis in  $R^n$
4. Find the transition matrix from the basis  $B$  to the basis  $B'$  in  $R^n$
5. Represent coordinates in general  $n$ -dimensional spaces

Let's do our math stretches!

Consider the following matrix.

$$A = \begin{matrix} \begin{matrix} \vec{c}_1 & \vec{c}_2 & \vec{c}_3 & \vec{c}_4 \end{matrix} \\ \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & -1 & 5 \\ 7 & 1 & 13 & 6 \end{bmatrix} \begin{matrix} \vec{r}_1 \\ \vec{r}_2 \end{matrix} \end{matrix}$$

The row vectors of  $A$  are:

OR

$$(1, 3, -1, 5), (7, 1, 13, 6)$$
$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 & -1 & 5 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 7 & 1 & 13 & 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

The column vectors of  $A$  are:

$$(1, 7)^T, (3, 1)^T, (-1, 13)^T, (5, 6)^T$$
$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 7 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 3 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 13 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 6 \end{bmatrix}$$

#### DEFINITION OF ROW SPACE AND COLUMN SPACE OF A MATRIX

Let  $A$  be an  $m \times n$  matrix.

The row space of  $A$  is the subspace of  $R^n$  spanned by the row vectors of  $A$ .

The column space of  $A$  is the subspace of  $R^m$  spanned by the column vectors of  $A$ .

Recall that two matrices are row-equivalent when one can be obtained from the other by elementary row operations.

### THEOREM 3.12: ROW-EQUIVALENT MATRICES HAVE THE SAME ROW SPACE

If an  $m \times n$  matrix  $A$  is row-equivalent to an  $m \times n$  matrix  $B$ , then the row space of  $A$  is equal to the row space of  $B$ .

Proof:

Since  $A$  is row-equivalent to  $B$ ,  $\exists$  a finite number of elementary matrices  $E_1, E_2, \dots, E_k \Rightarrow B = E_k E_{k-1} \dots E_2 E_1 A$ , it follows that the row vectors of  $B$  can be written as linear combinations of the row vectors of  $A$ . The row vectors of  $B$  lie in the row space of  $A$ , and the subspace spanned by the row vectors of  $B$  is contained in the row space of  $A$ . Similarly, the row vectors of  $A$  lie in the row space of  $B$ , and the subspace spanned by the row vectors of  $A$  is contained in the row space of  $B$ .  $\therefore$  The 2 rowspaces are subspaces of each other, hence they are equal.

### THEOREM 3.12: BASIS FOR THE ROW SPACE OF A MATRIX

If a matrix  $A$  is row-equivalent to a matrix  $B$  in row-echelon form, then the nonzero row vectors of  $B$  form a basis for the row space of  $A$ .

To find a basis for the row space of a matrix: row reduce the matrix. The nonzero rows in the reduced matrix are a basis for the row space of the matrix. Your answer should be in the form of a set of row vectors.

To find a basis for the column space of a matrix:

Method 1: Use the steps above on the transpose of the matrix. Your answer should be in the form of a set of column vectors.

Method 2: Use reduced form of the original matrix to find the columns which contain the pivots (leading ones). Use the corresponding columns from the original matrix for a basis. Your answer should be in the form of a set of column vectors.

Example 1: Find a basis for the row space and column space of the following matrix:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} \vec{c}_1 & \vec{c}_2 & \\ 2 & -3 & 1 \\ 5 & 10 & 6 \\ 8 & -7 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$B = \text{rref}(A) = \begin{bmatrix} \vec{c}_1 & \vec{c}_2 & \vec{c}_3 \\ 1 & 0 & 4/5 \\ 0 & 1 & 1/5 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{matrix} \vec{r}_1 \\ \vec{r}_2 \\ \vec{r}_3 \end{matrix}$$

A Basis for the row space:  $\{(1, 0, 4/5), (0, 1, 1/5)\}$

Method 2:

A Basis for the column space:

$$\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 5 \\ 8 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -3 \\ 10 \\ -7 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

A basis for the column space:

$$\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 23/7 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 2/7 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

Method 1:

$$\text{rref}(A^T) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 23/7 \\ 0 & 1 & 2/7 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Example 2: Find a basis for the row space and column space of the following matrix:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 20 & 31 \\ 6 & -5 & -6 \\ 2 & -11 & -16 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\text{rref}(A) = \begin{bmatrix} \vec{c}_1 & \vec{c}_2 & \vec{c}_3 \\ 1 & 0 & 1/4 \\ 0 & 1 & 3/2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \begin{matrix} \vec{r}_1 \\ \vec{r}_2 \\ \vec{r}_3 \end{matrix}$$

A basis for the row space:  $\{(1, 0, 1/4), (0, 1, 3/2)\}$

A basis for the column space:  $\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 6 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 20 \\ -5 \\ -11 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$

### THEOREM 3.13: ROW AND COLUMN SPACES HAVE EQUAL DIMENSIONS

If  $A$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix, then the row space and the column space of  $A$  have the same dimension.

### DEFINITION OF THE RANK OF A MATRIX

The dimension of the row (or column) space of a matrix  $A$  is called the rank of  $A$  and is denoted by  $\text{rank}(A)$ .

Example 3: Find the rank of the matrix from

a. Example 1

$$\text{rank}(A) = 2$$

b. Example 2

$$\text{rank}(A) = 2$$

### THEOREM 3.14: SOLUTIONS OF A HOMOGENEOUS SYSTEM

If  $A$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix, then the set of all solutions of the homogeneous system of linear equations

$A\vec{x} = \vec{0}$  is a subspace of  $\mathbb{R}^n$  called the nullspace of  $A$  and is denoted  $N(A)$ . So,

$$N(A) = \{ \vec{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n : A\vec{x} = \vec{0} \}$$

The dimension of the nullspace of  $A$  is called the nullity of  $A$ .

Proof:

Since  $A$  is  $m \times n$ ,  $\vec{x}$  has <sup>size</sup>  $n \times 1$ . So the set of all solutions has to be a subset of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . This set has to be nonempty, since

$$A\vec{0} = \vec{0}.$$

$A(\vec{x}_1 + \vec{x}_2) = A\vec{x}_1 + A\vec{x}_2 = \vec{0} + \vec{0} = \vec{0}$ , so  $A$  is closed under  $+$ .

$A(c\vec{x}_1) = c(A\vec{x}_1) = c\vec{0} = \vec{0}$ , so  $A$  is closed under scal. mult.

$\therefore A\vec{x} = \vec{0}$  is a subspace of  $\mathbb{R}^n$ . //

Example 4: Find the nullspace of the following matrix  $A$ , and determine the nullity of  $A$ .

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 4 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \\ -2 & -8 & -4 & -2 \end{bmatrix} \quad \vec{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \\ x_4 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$A\vec{x} = \vec{0}$$

$$\text{rref}(A) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -2 & 5 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{array}{l} x_1 - 2x_3 + 5x_4 = 0 \\ x_2 + x_3 - x_4 = 0 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{l} x_1 = 2s - 5t \quad x_3 = s \\ x_2 = -s + t \quad x_4 = t \end{array}$$

$$\vec{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \\ x_4 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 2s - 5t \\ -s + t \\ s \\ t \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \begin{bmatrix} 2s \\ -s \\ s \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} -5t \\ t \\ 0 \\ t \end{bmatrix} \\ &= s \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + t \begin{bmatrix} -5 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} N(A) &= \left\{ (2s - 5t, -s + t, s, t) : \right. \\ &\quad \left. s, t \in \mathbb{R} \right\} \\ &= \left\{ s(2, -1, 1, 0) + t(-5, 1, 0, 1) : \right. \\ &\quad \left. s, t \in \mathbb{R} \right\} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{nullity}(A) = 2$$

A basis for the  $N(A)$ :

$$\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ -1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -5 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

THEOREM 3.15: DIMENSION OF THE SOLUTION SPACE

If  $A$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix of rank  $r$ , then the dimension of the solution space of  $A\vec{x} = \vec{0}$  is  $n - r$ . That is,

$$n = \text{rank}(A) + \text{nullity}(A)$$

Example 5: consider the following homogeneous system of linear equations:

$$\begin{aligned} x - y &= 0 \\ -x + y &= 0 \end{aligned} \rightarrow \text{homogeneous}$$

a. Find a basis for the solution space.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \vec{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\text{ref}(A) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \rightarrow x - y = 0 \rightarrow x = y \rightarrow \begin{matrix} x = t \\ y = t \end{matrix}$$

$$\vec{x} = \begin{bmatrix} t \\ t \end{bmatrix} = t \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

A basis for the solution space is:  $\left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$

b. Find the dimension of the solution space. ( $\text{nullity}(A)$ )

1

c. Find the solution of a consistent system  $A\vec{x} = \vec{b}$  in the form  $\vec{x}_p + \vec{x}_h$

$$A\vec{x} = \vec{b} \rightarrow \vec{x} = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}}_{\vec{x}_p} + t \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}}_{\vec{x}_h}$$

$$\vec{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

### THEOREM 3.16: SOLUTIONS OF A NONHOMOGENEOUS LINEAR SYSTEM

If  $\vec{x}_p$  is a particular solution of the nonhomogeneous system  $A\vec{x} = \vec{b}$ , then every solution of this system can be written in the form  $\vec{x} = \vec{x}_p + \vec{x}_h$  where  $\vec{x}_h$  is a solution of the corresponding homogeneous system  $A\vec{x} = \vec{0}$ .

Proof: Let  $\vec{x}$  be any solution of  $A\vec{x} = \vec{b}$ . Then  $\vec{x} - \vec{x}_p$  is a solution to  $A\vec{x} = \vec{0}$ .  $A(\vec{x} - \vec{x}_p) = \vec{0} \rightarrow A\vec{x} - A\vec{x}_p = \vec{0}$ , which gives us  $\vec{b} - \vec{b} = \vec{0}$ . Let  $\vec{x}_h = \vec{x} - \vec{x}_p$ , thus  $\vec{x} = \vec{x}_p + \vec{x}_h$ . //

### THEOREM 3.17: SOLUTIONS OF A SYSTEM OF LINEAR EQUATIONS

The system  $A\vec{x} = \vec{b}$  is consistent if and only if  $\vec{b}$  is in the column space of  $A$ .

Proof:

$$A\vec{x} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix} = x_1 \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} \\ a_{21} \\ a_{31} \\ \vdots \\ a_{m1} \end{bmatrix} + x_2 \begin{bmatrix} a_{12} \\ a_{22} \\ a_{32} \\ \vdots \\ a_{m2} \end{bmatrix} + \cdots + x_n \begin{bmatrix} a_{1n} \\ a_{2n} \\ a_{3n} \\ \vdots \\ a_{mn} \end{bmatrix}$$

So  $A\vec{x} = \vec{b}$  iff  $\vec{b} = \begin{bmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ \vdots \\ b_n \end{bmatrix}$  is a linear combo of the columns

of  $A$ . That is, the system is consistent iff  $\vec{b} \in$  subspace  $R^m$  spanned by the columns of  $A$ . //



Example 7: consider the following nonhomogeneous system of linear equations:

$$\begin{aligned} 2x - 4y + 5z &= 8 \\ -7x + 14y + 4z &= -28 \\ 3x - 6y + z &= 12 \end{aligned}$$

$$\vec{x} = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix}$$

Determine whether  $A\vec{x} = \vec{b}$  is consistent.

$$\left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 2 & -4 & 5 & 8 \\ -7 & 14 & 4 & -28 \\ 3 & -6 & 1 & 12 \end{array} \right] \xrightarrow{\text{ref}} \left[ \begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & -2 & 0 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right] \rightarrow \begin{aligned} x - 2y &= 4 \rightarrow x = 2t + 4 \\ z &= 0 \\ y &= t \end{aligned}$$

$$\vec{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 2t + 4 \\ t \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} 2t \\ t \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} + t \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

So  $A\vec{x} = \vec{b}$  is consistent.

If the system is consistent, write the solution in the form  $\vec{x} = \vec{x}_p + \vec{x}_h$ , where  $\vec{x}_p$  is a particular solution of  $A\vec{x} = \vec{b}$  and  $\vec{x}_h$  is a solution of  $A\vec{x} = \vec{0}$ .

$$\vec{x} = \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 4 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}}_{\vec{x}_p} + \underbrace{\begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}}_{\vec{x}_h} \text{ is a solution.}$$

## COORDINATE REPRESENTATION RELATIVE TO A BASIS

Let  $B = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  be an ordered basis for a vector space  $V$ , and let  $\mathbf{x}$  be a vector in  $V$  such that

$$\vec{x} = c_1 \vec{v}_1 + c_2 \vec{v}_2 + \dots + c_n \vec{v}_n$$

The scalars  $c_1, c_2, \dots, c_n$  are called the coordinates of  $\vec{x}$  relative to the basis  $B$ . The column matrix (or coordinate matrix) of  $\vec{x}$  relative to  $B$  is the column matrix in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  whose components are the coordinates of  $\vec{x}$ .

$$[\vec{x}]_B = \begin{bmatrix} c_1 \\ c_2 \\ \vdots \\ c_n \end{bmatrix}$$

Note: In  $\mathbb{R}^n$ , column notation is used for the coordinate matrix. For the vector  $\vec{x} = (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$ , the  $x_i$ 's are the coordinates of  $\vec{x}$  (relative to the standard basis  $S$  for  $\mathbb{R}^n$ ). So

you have

$$[\vec{x}]_S = \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{bmatrix}$$

Example 8: Find the coordinate matrix of  $\mathbf{x}$  in  $\mathbb{R}^n$  relative to the standard basis.

$$\mathbf{x} = (1, -3, 0)$$

$$S = \{(1, 0, 0), (0, 1, 0), (0, 0, 1)\}$$

$$\vec{x} = 1(1, 0, 0) - 3(0, 1, 0) + 0(0, 0, 1)$$

$$[\vec{x}]_S = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ -3 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Example 9: Given the coordinate matrix of  $\mathbf{x}$  relative to a (nonstandard) basis  $B$  for  $R^n$ , find the coordinate matrix of  $\mathbf{x}$  relative to the standard basis.

$$B = \{ \underset{\vec{v}_1}{(4, 0, 7, 3)}, \underset{\vec{v}_2}{(0, 5, -1, -1)}, \underset{\vec{v}_3}{(-3, 4, 2, 1)}, \underset{\vec{v}_4}{(0, 1, 5, 0)} \}$$

$$[\mathbf{x}]_B = \begin{bmatrix} -2 \\ 3 \\ 4 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\vec{x} = c_1 \vec{v}_1 + c_2 \vec{v}_2 + c_3 \vec{v}_3 + c_4 \vec{v}_4$$

$$\vec{x} = -2(4, 0, 7, 3) + 3(0, 5, -1, -1) + 4(-3, 4, 2, 1) + 1(0, 1, 5, 0)$$

$$\boxed{\vec{x} = (-20, 32, -4, -5)}$$

Example 10: Find coordinate matrix of  $\mathbf{x}$  in  $R^n$  relative to the basis  $B'$ .

$$B' = \{ \underset{\vec{v}_1}{(-6, 7)}, \underset{\vec{v}_2}{(4, -3)} \}, \quad \mathbf{x} = (-26, 32)$$

$$\vec{x} = c_1 \vec{v}_1 + c_2 \vec{v}_2$$

$$(-26, 32) = c_1(-6, 7) + c_2(4, -3)$$

$$-6c_1 + 4c_2 = -26$$

$$7c_1 - 3c_2 = 32$$

$$c_1 = 5, c_2 = 1$$

$$\boxed{[\vec{x}]_{B'} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}}$$

The matrix  $P$  is called the transition matrix from  $B'$  to  $B$ , where  $[\vec{x}]_{B'}$  is the coordinate matrix of  $\vec{x}$  relative to  $B'$ , and  $[\vec{x}]_B$  is the coordinate matrix of  $\vec{x}$  relative to  $B$ . Multiplication by the transition matrix  $P$  changes a coordinate matrix relative to  $B'$  into a coordinate matrix relative to  $B$ .

Change of basis from  $B'$  to  $B$ :

$$P[\vec{x}]_{B'} = [\vec{x}]_B$$

Change of basis from  $B$  to  $B'$ :

$$P^{-1}[\vec{x}]_B = [\vec{x}]_{B'}$$

The change of basis problem in example 10 can be represented by the matrix equation:

$$\begin{aligned} -6c_1 + 4c_2 &= -26 \\ 7c_1 - 3c_2 &= 32 \end{aligned}$$

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} -6 & 4 \\ 7 & -3 \end{bmatrix}, [\vec{x}]_S = \begin{bmatrix} -26 \\ 32 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$P[\vec{x}]_{B'} = [\vec{x}]_S$$

$$[\vec{x}]_{B'} = P^{-1} \begin{bmatrix} -26 \\ 32 \end{bmatrix} = -\frac{1}{10} \begin{bmatrix} -3 & -4 \\ -7 & -6 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -26 \\ 32 \end{bmatrix} = -\frac{1}{10} \begin{bmatrix} -50 \\ -10 \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 5 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \checkmark$$

### THEOREM 3.18: THE INVERSE OF A TRANSITION MATRIX

If  $P$  is the transition matrix from a basis  $B'$  to a basis  $B$  in  $R^n$ , then  $P$  is invertible and the transition matrix from  $B$  to  $B'$  is given by  $P^{-1}$ . FYI: The transition matrix from  $B'$  to  $B$  is  $P$ .

### LEMMA

Let  $B = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  and  $B' = \{\mathbf{u}_1, \mathbf{u}_2, \dots, \mathbf{u}_n\}$  be two bases for a vector space  $V$ . If

$$\mathbf{v}_1 = c_{11}\mathbf{u}_1 + c_{21}\mathbf{u}_2 + \dots + c_{n1}\mathbf{u}_n$$

$$\mathbf{v}_2 = c_{12}\mathbf{u}_1 + c_{22}\mathbf{u}_2 + \dots + c_{n2}\mathbf{u}_n$$

$\vdots$

$$\mathbf{v}_n = c_{1n}\mathbf{u}_1 + c_{2n}\mathbf{u}_2 + \dots + c_{nn}\mathbf{u}_n$$

then the transition matrix from  $B$  to  $B'$  is

$$Q = \begin{bmatrix} c_{11} & \dots & c_{1n} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ c_{n1} & \dots & c_{nn} \end{bmatrix}$$

**THEOREM 3.19: TRANSITION MATRIX FROM  $B$  TO  $B'$**

Let  $B = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  and  $B' = \{u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n\}$  be two bases for  $R^n$ . Then the transition matrix  $P^{-1}$  from  $B$  to  $B'$  can be found using Gauss-Jordan elimination on the  $n \times 2n$  matrix  $[B' \ B]$  as follows.

row reduce  $[B' \ B]$  to  $[I_n \ P^{-1}]$

Note: The transition matrix from  $B'$  to  $B$  can be found using Gauss-Jordan elimination on the  $n \times 2n$  matrix  $[B \ B']$  as follows.

row reduce  $[B \ B']$  to  $[I_n \ P]$

Example 11: Find the transition matrix from  $B$  to  $B'$ .

$B = \{(1,1), (1,0)\}$ ,  $B' = \{(1,0), (0,1)\}$

standard basis for  $R^2$

$$[B' \ B] = \left[ \begin{array}{cc|cc} 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

$\underbrace{\hspace{2cm}}_{I_n} \quad \underbrace{\hspace{2cm}}_{P^{-1}}$

$$P^{-1} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Example 12: Find the coordinate matrix of  $p$  relative to the standard basis for  $P_3$ .

$p = 3x^2 + 114x + 13$

$S = \{1, x, x^2, x^3\}$   
 $\vec{v}_1 \quad \vec{v}_2 \quad \vec{v}_3 \quad \vec{v}_4$

$$c_1(1) + c_2(x) + c_3(x^2) + c_4(x^3) = 13 + 114x + 3x^2$$

$$c_1 + c_2x + c_3x^2 + c_4x^3 = 13 + 114x + 3x^2 + 0x^3$$

$c_1 = 13$   
 $c_2 = 114$   
 $c_3 = 3$   
 $c_4 = 0$

$$[p]_S = \begin{bmatrix} 13 \\ 114 \\ 3 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

## 3.5: THE KERNEL, RANGE, AND MATRIX REPRESENTATIONS OF LINEAR TRANSFORMATIONS, AND SIMILAR MATRICES

### Learning Objectives:

1. Find the kernel of a linear transformation
2. Find a basis for the range, the rank, and the nullity of a linear transformation
3. Determine whether a linear transformation is one-to-one or onto
4. Determine whether vector spaces are isomorphic
5. Find the standard matrix for a linear transformation
6. Find the standard matrix for the composition of linear transformations and find the inverse of an invertible linear transformation
7. Find the matrix for a linear transformation relative to a nonstandard basis
8. Find and use a matrix for a linear transformation
9. Show that two matrices are similar and use the properties of similar matrices

### THE KERNEL OF A LINEAR TRANSFORMATION

We know from an earlier theorem that for any linear transformation \_\_\_\_\_, the zero vector in \_\_\_\_\_ maps to the \_\_\_\_\_ vector in \_\_\_\_\_. That is, \_\_\_\_\_. In this section, we will consider whether there are other vectors \_\_\_\_\_ such that \_\_\_\_\_. The collection of all such \_\_\_\_\_ is called the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_. Note that the zero vector is denoted by the symbol \_\_\_\_\_ in both \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, even though these two zero vectors are often different.

### DEFINITION OF KERNEL OF A LINEAR TRANSFORMATION

Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be a linear transformation. Then the set of all vectors  $\mathbf{v}$  in  $V$  that satisfy \_\_\_\_\_ is called the \_\_\_\_\_ of  $T$  and is denoted by \_\_\_\_\_.

Example 1: Find the kernel of the linear transformation.

a.  $T : \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3, T(x, y, z) = (x, 0, z)$

b.  $T : P_3 \rightarrow P_2, T(a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + a_3x^3) = a_1 + 2a_2x + 3a_3x^2$

c.

$$T : P_2 \rightarrow R,$$

$$T(p) = \int_0^1 p(x) dx$$

### THEOREM 3.20: THE KERNEL IS A SUBSPACE OF $V$

The kernel of a linear transformation  $T : V \rightarrow W$  is a subspace of the domain  $V$ .

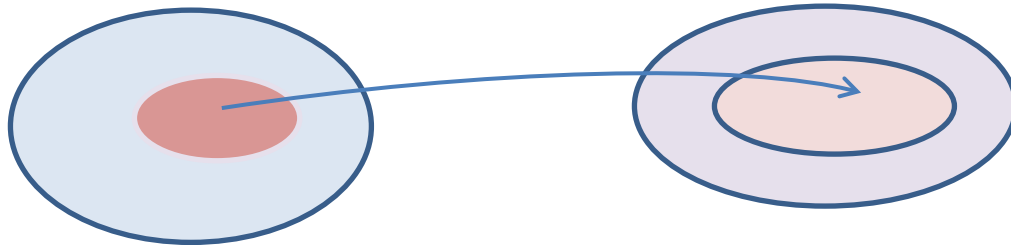
Proof:

### THEOREM 3.20: COROLLARY

Let  $T : R^n \rightarrow R^m$  be the linear transformation given by  $T(\mathbf{x}) = A\mathbf{x}$ . Then the kernel of  $T$  is equal to the solution space of \_\_\_\_\_.

### THEOREM 3.21: THE RANGE OF $T$ IS A SUBSPACE OF $W$

The range of a linear transformation  $T : V \rightarrow W$  is a subspace of  $W$ .



### THEOREM 3.21: COROLLARY

Let  $T : R^n \rightarrow R^m$  be the linear transformation given by  $T(\mathbf{x}) = A\mathbf{x}$ . Then the column space of \_\_\_\_\_ is equal to the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_.

Example 2: Let  $T(\mathbf{v}) = A\mathbf{v}$  represent the linear transformation  $T$ . Find a basis for the kernel of  $T$  and the range of  $T$ .

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$



## DEFINITION OF RANK AND NULLITY OF A LINEAR TRANSFORMATION

Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be a linear transformation. The dimension of the kernel of  $T$  is called the \_\_\_\_\_ of  $T$  and is denoted by \_\_\_\_\_. The dimension of the range of  $T$  is called the \_\_\_\_\_ of  $T$  and is denoted by \_\_\_\_\_.

### THEOREM 3.22: SUM OF RANK AND NULLITY

Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be a linear transformation from an  $n$ -dimensional vector space  $V$  into a vector space  $W$ . Then the \_\_\_\_\_ of the \_\_\_\_\_ of the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ is equal to the dimension of the \_\_\_\_\_. That is,

Proof:

Example 3: Define the linear transformation  $T$  by  $T(\mathbf{x}) = A\mathbf{x}$ . Find  $\ker(T)$ ,  $\text{null}(T)$ ,  $\text{range}(T)$ , and  $\text{rank}(T)$ .

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & -2 & 6 & -1 & 15 \\ 4 & 3 & 8 & 10 & -14 \\ 2 & -3 & 4 & -4 & 20 \end{bmatrix}$$

Example 4: Let  $T : \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$  be a linear transformation. Use the given information to find the nullity of  $T$  and give a geometric description of the kernel and range of  $T$ .

$T$  is the reflection through the  $yz$ -coordinate plane:

$$T(x, y, z) = (-x, y, z)$$

## ONE-TO-ONE AND ONTO LINEAR TRANSFORMATIONS

If the \_\_\_\_\_ vector is the only vector \_\_\_\_\_ such that \_\_\_\_\_, then \_\_\_\_\_ is \_\_\_\_\_.

A function \_\_\_\_\_ is called one-to-one when the \_\_\_\_\_ of every \_\_\_\_\_ in the range consists of a \_\_\_\_\_ vector. This is equivalent to saying that \_\_\_\_\_ is one-to-one if and only if, for all \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ implies that \_\_\_\_\_.

### THEOREM 3.23: ONE-TO-ONE LINEAR TRANSFORMATIONS

Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be a linear transformation. Then  $T$  is one-to-one if and only if \_\_\_\_\_.

Proof:

### THEOREM 3.24: ONTO LINEAR TRANSFORMATIONS

Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be a linear transformation, where  $W$  is finite dimensional. Then  $T$  is onto if and only if the \_\_\_\_\_ of  $T$  is equal to the \_\_\_\_\_ of  $W$ .

Proof:

### THEOREM 3.25: ONE-TO-ONE AND ONTO LINEAR TRANSFORMATIONS

Let  $T : V \rightarrow W$  be a linear transformation with vector spaces  $V$  and  $W$ , \_\_\_\_\_ of dimension  $n$ . Then  $T$  is one-to-one if and only if it is \_\_\_\_\_.

Example 5: Determine whether the linear transformation is one-to-one, onto, or neither.

$$T : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2, T(x, y) = (x - y, y - x)$$

### DEFINITION: ISOMORPHISM

A linear transformation  $T : V \rightarrow W$  that is \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ is called an \_\_\_\_\_ . Moreover, if  $V$  and  $W$  are vector spaces such that there exists an isomorphism from  $V$  to  $W$ , then  $V$  and  $W$  are said to be \_\_\_\_\_ to each other.

## THEOREM 3.26: ISOMORPHIC SPACES AND DIMENSION

Two finite dimensional vector spaces  $V$  and  $W$  are \_\_\_\_\_ if and only if they are of the same \_\_\_\_\_.

Example 6: Determine a relationship among  $m, n, j,$  and  $k$  such that  $M_{m,n}$  is isomorphic to  $M_{j,k}$ .

### WHICH FORMAT IS BETTER? WHY?

Consider  $T : \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3, T(x_1, x_2, x_3) = (4x_1 - x_2 - 5x_3, -2x_1 + x_2 + 6x_3, x_2 - 3x_3)$

and

$$T(\mathbf{x}) = A\mathbf{x} = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & -1 & -5 \\ -2 & 1 & 6 \\ 0 & 1 & -3 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{bmatrix}$$

What do you think?

The key to representing a linear transformation \_\_\_\_\_ by a matrix is to determine how it acts on a \_\_\_\_\_ for \_\_\_\_\_. Once you know the \_\_\_\_\_ of every vector in the \_\_\_\_\_, you can use the properties of linear transformations to determine \_\_\_\_\_ for any \_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_.

Do you remember the standard basis for  $\mathbb{R}^n$ ? Write this standard basis for  $\mathbb{R}^n$  in column vector notation.

$$B = \{\mathbf{e}_1, \mathbf{e}_2, \dots, \mathbf{e}_n\} =$$

### THEOREM 3.26: STANDARD MATRIX FOR A LINEAR TRANSFORMATION

Let  $T : R^n \rightarrow R^m$  be a linear transformation such that, for the standard basis vectors  $\mathbf{e}_i$  of  $R^n$ ,

$$T(\mathbf{e}_1) = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} \\ a_{21} \\ \vdots \\ a_{m1} \end{bmatrix}, \quad T(\mathbf{e}_2) = \begin{bmatrix} a_{12} \\ a_{22} \\ \vdots \\ a_{m2} \end{bmatrix}, \quad \dots, \quad T(\mathbf{e}_n) = \begin{bmatrix} a_{1n} \\ a_{2n} \\ \vdots \\ a_{mn} \end{bmatrix},$$

then the  $m \times n$  matrix whose  $n$  columns correspond to  $T(\mathbf{e}_i)$

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & \dots & a_{1n} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & \dots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix}$$

is such that  $T(\mathbf{v}) = A\mathbf{v}$  for every  $\mathbf{v}$  in  $R^n$ .  $A$  is called the standard matrix for  $T$ .

**Example 5:** Find the standard matrix for the linear transformation  $T$ .

$$T(x, y) = (4x + y, 0, 2x - 3y)$$

**Example 2:** Use the standard matrix for the linear transformation  $T$  to find the image of the vector  $\mathbf{v}$ .

$$T(x, y) = (x + y, x - y, 2x, 2y), \quad \mathbf{v} = (3, -3)$$

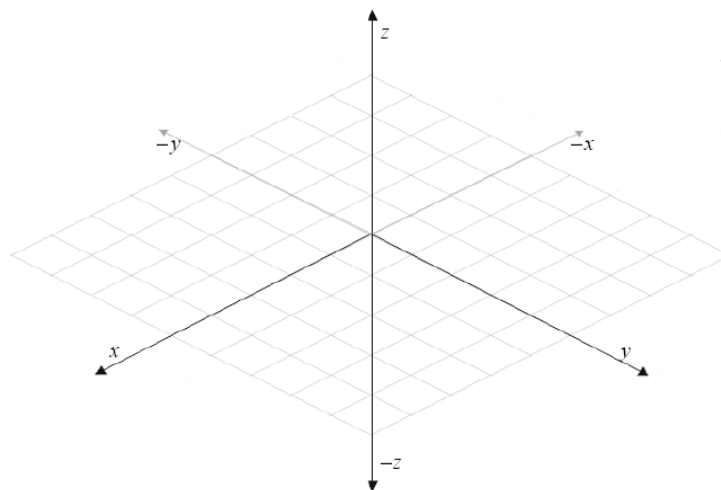
Example 6: Consider the following linear transformation  $T$ :

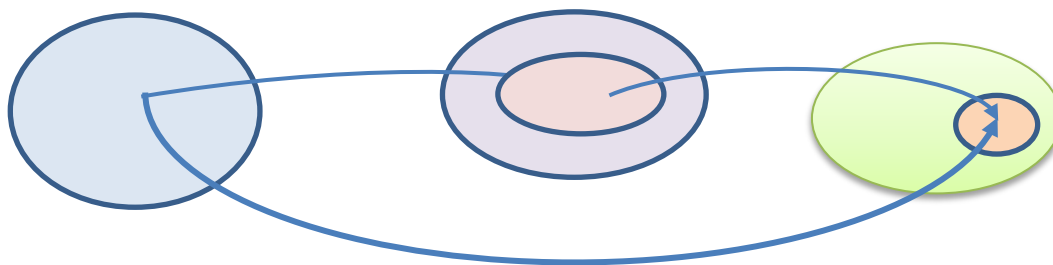
$T$  is the reflection through the  $yz$ -coordinate plane in  $R^3 : T(x, y, z) = (-x, y, z)$ ,  $\mathbf{v} = (2, 3, 4)$ .

a. Find the standard matrix  $A$  for the following linear transformation  $T$ .

b. Use  $A$  to find the image of the vector  $\mathbf{v}$ .

c. Sketch the graph of  $\mathbf{v}$  and its image.





### THEOREM 3.27: COMPOSITION OF LINEAR TRANSFORMATIONS

Let  $T_1 : R^n \rightarrow R^m$  and  $T_2 : R^m \rightarrow R^p$  be linear transformations with standard matrices  $A_1$  and  $A_2$ , respectively. The composition  $T : R^n \rightarrow R^p$ , defined by  $T(\mathbf{v}) = T_2(T_1(\mathbf{v}))$ , is a linear transformation. Moreover, the standard matrix  $A$  for  $T$  is given by the matrix product  $A = A_2A_1$ .

Proof:

Example 7: Find the standard matrices  $A$  and  $A'$  for  $T = T_2 \circ T_1$  and  $T = T_1 \circ T_2$ .

$$T_1 : R^2 \rightarrow R^3, T_1(x, y) = (x, y, y)$$

$$T_2 : R^3 \rightarrow R^2, T_2(x, y, z) = (y, z)$$



### DEFINITION OF INVERSE LINEAR TRANSFORMATION

If  $T_1 : R^n \rightarrow R^n$  and  $T_2 : R^n \rightarrow R^n$  are linear transformations such that for every  $\mathbf{v}$  in  $R^n$ ,

then  $T_2$  is called the \_\_\_\_\_ of  $T_1$ , and  $T_1$  is said to be \_\_\_\_\_.

\*\*Not every \_\_\_\_\_ transformation has an \_\_\_\_\_. If \_\_\_\_\_ is \_\_\_\_\_,

however, the inverse is \_\_\_\_\_ and is denoted by \_\_\_\_\_.

### THEOREM 3.28

Let  $T : R^n \rightarrow R^n$  be a linear transformation with a standard matrix  $A$ . Then the following conditions are equivalent.

1.  $T$  is \_\_\_\_\_.
2.  $T$  is an \_\_\_\_\_.
3.  $A$  is \_\_\_\_\_.
4. If  $T$  is invertible with standard matrix  $A$ , then the standard matrix for \_\_\_\_\_ is \_\_\_\_\_.

Example 8: Determine whether the linear transformation  $T(x, y) = (x + y, x - y)$  is invertible. If it is, find its inverse.

### THEOREM 3.29: TRANSFORMATION MATRIX FOR NONSTANDARD BASES

Let  $V$  and  $W$  be finite-dimensional vector spaces with bases  $B$  and  $B'$ , respectively, where

$$B = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}.$$

If  $T : V \rightarrow W$  is a linear transformation such that

$$[T(\mathbf{v}_1)]_{B'} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} \\ a_{21} \\ \vdots \\ a_{m1} \end{bmatrix}, [T(\mathbf{v}_2)]_{B'} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{12} \\ a_{22} \\ \vdots \\ a_{m2} \end{bmatrix}, \dots, [T(\mathbf{v}_n)]_{B'} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{1n} \\ a_{2n} \\ \vdots \\ a_{mn} \end{bmatrix},$$

then the  $m \times n$  matrix whose  $n$  columns correspond to  $[T(\mathbf{v}_i)]_{B'}$

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{bmatrix}$$

Example 9: Find  $T(\mathbf{v})$  by using (a) the standard matrix, and (b) the matrix relative to  $B$  and  $B'$ .

$$T : \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2, T(x, y, z) = (x - y, y - z), \mathbf{v} = (1, 2, 3),$$

$$B = \{(1, 1, 1), (1, 1, 0), (0, 1, 1)\}, B' = \{(1, 2), (1, 1)\}$$



Example 10: Let  $B = \{e^{2x}, xe^{2x}, x^2e^{2x}\}$  be a basis for a subspace of  $\mathcal{W}$  of the space of continuous functions, and let  $D_x$  be the differential operator on  $\mathcal{W}$ . Find the matrix for  $D_x$  relative to the basis  $B$ .

A classical problem in linear algebra is determining whether it is possible to find a basis \_\_\_\_\_ such that the matrix for \_\_\_\_\_ relative to \_\_\_\_\_ is \_\_\_\_\_.

1. Matrix for  $T$  relative to  $B$  : \_\_\_\_\_
2. Matrix for  $T$  relative to  $B'$  : \_\_\_\_\_
3. Transition matrix from  $B'$  to  $B$  : \_\_\_\_\_
4. Transition matrix from  $B$  to  $B'$  : \_\_\_\_\_

Example 11: Find the matrix  $A'$  relative to the basis  $B'$ .

$$T : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2, T(x, y) = (x - 2y, 4x), B' = \{(-2, 1), (-1, 1)\}$$

Example 12: Let  $B = \{(1, -1), (-2, 1)\}$  and  $B' = \{(-1, 1), (1, 2)\}$  be bases for  $\mathbb{R}^2$ ,  $[\mathbf{v}]_{B'} = [1 \ -4]^T$ , and let

$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$  be the matrix for  $T: \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$  relative to  $B$ .

a. Find the transition matrix  $P$  from  $B'$  to  $B$ .

b. Use the matrices  $P$  and  $A$  to find  $[\mathbf{v}]_B$  and  $[T(\mathbf{v})_{B'}]$  where  $[\mathbf{v}]_{B'} = [1 \ -4]^T$ .

## DEFINITION OF SIMILAR MATRICES

For square matrices  $A$  and  $A'$  of order  $n$ ,  $A'$  is said to be similar to  $A$  when there exists an invertible matrix  $P$  such that  $A' = P^{-1}AP$ .

### THEOREM 3.30

Let  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$  be square matrices of order  $n$ . Then the following properties are true.

1.  $A$  is \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_.
2. If  $A$  is similar to  $B$ , then \_\_\_\_\_ is \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_.
3. If  $A$  is similar to  $B$  and  $B$  is similar to  $C$ , then \_\_\_\_\_ is \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_.

Proof:

Example 13: Use the matrix  $P$  to show that  $A$  and  $A'$  are similar.

$$P = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix}, A' = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$



## DIAGONAL MATRICES

Diagonal matrices have many \_\_\_\_\_ advantages over nondiagonal matrices.

$$D = \begin{pmatrix} d_1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & d_2 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & d_n \end{pmatrix} \quad D^k = \begin{pmatrix} \text{---} & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & \text{---} & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \text{---} \end{pmatrix}$$

Also, a diagonal matrix is its own \_\_\_\_\_. Additionally, if all the diagonal elements are nonzero, then the inverse of a diagonal matrix is the matrix whose main diagonal elements are the \_\_\_\_\_ of corresponding elements in the original matrix. Because of these advantages, it is important to find ways (if possible) to choose a basis for \_\_\_\_\_ such that the \_\_\_\_\_ matrix is \_\_\_\_\_.

Example 14: Suppose  $A = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{3}{2} & -1 & -\frac{1}{2} \\ -\frac{1}{2} & 2 & \frac{1}{2} \\ \frac{1}{2} & 1 & \frac{5}{2} \end{bmatrix}$  is the matrix for  $T : R^3 \rightarrow R^3$  relative to the standard basis.

Find the diagonal matrix  $A'$  for  $T$  relative to the basis  $B' = \{(1, 1, -1), (1, -1, 1), (-1, 1, 1)\}$ .

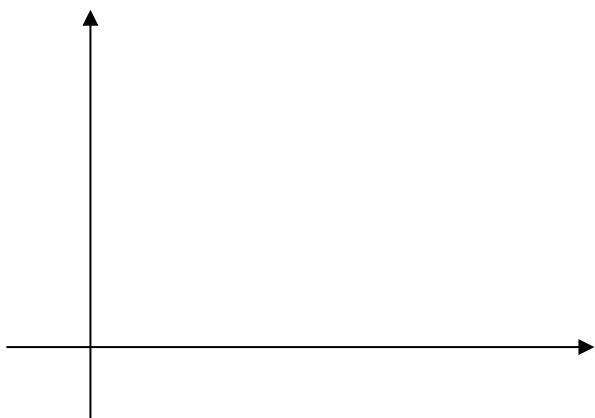
Example 15: Prove that if  $A$  is idempotent and  $B$  is similar to  $A$ , then  $B$  is idempotent. (An  $n \times n$  matrix is idempotent when  $A = A^2$ ).

Proof:

## 4.1: INNER PRODUCT SPACES

### Learning Objectives:

1. Find the length of a vector and find a unit vector
2. Find the distance between two vectors
3. Find a dot product and the angle between two vectors, determine orthogonality, and verify the Cauchy-Schwartz Inequality, the triangle inequality, and the Pythagorean Theorem
4. Use a matrix product to represent a dot product
5. Determine whether a function defines an inner product, and find the inner product of two vectors in  $R^n$ ,  $M_{m,n}$ ,  $P_n$ , and  $C[a,b]$
6. Find an orthogonal projection of a vector onto another vector in an inner product space



### DEFINITION OF LENGTH OF A VECTOR IN $R^n$

The \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, or \_\_\_\_\_ of a vector  $\mathbf{v} = \{v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n\}$  in \_\_\_\_\_ is given by

When would the length of a vector equal to 0?

Example 1: Consider the following vectors:

$$\mathbf{u} = \left(1, \frac{1}{2}\right) \quad \mathbf{v} = \left(2, -\frac{1}{2}\right)$$

- a. Find  $\|\mathbf{u}\|$

b. Find  $\|\mathbf{v}\|$

c. Find  $\|\mathbf{u}\| + \|\mathbf{v}\|$

d. Find  $\|\mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}\|$

e. Find  $\|3\mathbf{u}\|$

f. Find  $3\|\mathbf{u}\|$

Any observations?

### THEOREM 4.1: LENGTH OF A SCALAR MULTIPLE

Let  $\mathbf{v}$  be a vector in  $R^n$  and let  $c$  be a scalar. Then

where \_\_\_\_\_ is the \_\_\_\_\_ of  $c$ .

Proof:

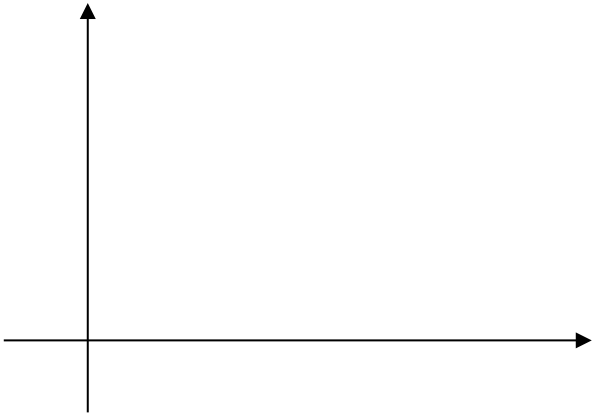
### THEOREM 4.2: UNIT VECTOR IN THE DIRECTION OF $\mathbf{v}$

If  $\mathbf{v}$  is a nonzero vector in  $R^n$ , then the vector

has length \_\_\_\_\_ and has the same \_\_\_\_\_ as  $\mathbf{v}$ .

Proof:

Example 2: Find the vector  $\mathbf{v}$  with  $\|\mathbf{v}\| = 3$  and the same direction as  $\mathbf{u} = (0, 2, 1, -1)$ .



#### DEFINITION OF DISTANCE BETWEEN TWO VECTORS

The distance between two vectors  $\mathbf{u}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  in  $\mathcal{R}^n$  is

Example 3: Find the distance between  $\mathbf{u} = (1, 1, 2)$  and  $\mathbf{v} = (-1, 3, 0)$ .



#### DEFINITION OF DOT PRODUCT IN $R^n$

The dot product of  $\mathbf{u} = (u_1, u_2, \dots, u_n)$  and  $\mathbf{v} = (v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n)$  is the \_\_\_\_\_ quantity

## DEFINITION OF THE ANGLE BETWEEN TWO VECTORS IN $R^n$

The \_\_\_\_\_ between two nonzero vectors in  $R^n$  is given by

Example 4: Find the angle between  $\mathbf{u} = (2, -1, 1)$  and  $\mathbf{v} = (3, 0, 1)$ .



Example 5: Consider the following vectors:

$$\mathbf{u} = (-1, 2) \quad \mathbf{v} = (2, -2)$$

a. Find  $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}$

b. Find  $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v}$

c. Find  $\|\mathbf{u}\|^2$

d. Find  $(\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}) \mathbf{v}$

e. Find  $\mathbf{u} \cdot (5\mathbf{v})$

### THEOREM 4.3: PROPERTIES OF THE DOT PRODUCT

If  $\mathbf{u}$ ,  $\mathbf{v}$  and  $\mathbf{w}$  are vectors in  $R^n$ , and  $c$  is a scalar, then the following properties are true.

1.  $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} =$  \_\_\_\_\_
2.  $\mathbf{u} \cdot (\mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w}) =$  \_\_\_\_\_
3.  $c(\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}) =$  \_\_\_\_\_  $=$  \_\_\_\_\_
4.  $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} =$  \_\_\_\_\_
5.  $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} \geq 0$  and  $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 0$  iff \_\_\_\_\_.

Example 6: Find  $(3\mathbf{u} - \mathbf{v}) \cdot (\mathbf{u} - 3\mathbf{v})$  given that  $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{u} = 8$ ,  $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 7$ , and  $\mathbf{v} \cdot \mathbf{v} = 6$ .

### THEOREM 4.4: THE CAUCHY-SCWARZ INEQUALITY

If  $\mathbf{u}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  are vectors in  $R^n$ , then

where \_\_\_\_\_ denotes the \_\_\_\_\_ value of  $\mathbf{u} \cdot \mathbf{v}$ .

Proof:

Example 7: Verify the Cauch-Schwarz Inequality for  $\mathbf{u} = (-1, 0)$  and  $\mathbf{v} = (1, 1)$ .

## DEFINITION OF ORTHOGONAL VECTORS

Two vectors  $\mathbf{u}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  in  $R^n$  are orthogonal if

Example 7: Determine all vectors in  $R^2$  that are orthogonal to  $\mathbf{u} = (3,1)$ .

## THEOREM 4.5: THE TRIANGLE INEQUALITY

If  $\mathbf{u}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  are vectors in  $R^n$ , then

Proof:

### THEOREM 4.6: THE PYTHAGOREAN THEOREM

If  $\mathbf{u}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  are vectors in  $R^n$ , then  $\mathbf{u}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  are orthogonal if and only if

Example 8: Verify the Pythagoren Theorem for the vectors  $\mathbf{u} = (3, -2)$  and  $\mathbf{v} = (4, 6)$ .

### DEFINITION OF AN INNER PRODUCT

Let  $\mathbf{u}$ ,  $\mathbf{v}$ , and  $\mathbf{w}$  be vectors in a vector space  $V$ , and let  $c$  be any scalar. An inner product on  $V$  is a function that associates a real number  $\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle$  with each pair of vectors  $\mathbf{u}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  and satisfies the following axioms.

1.  $\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle =$  \_\_\_\_\_
2.  $\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} + \mathbf{w} \rangle =$  \_\_\_\_\_
3.  $c\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle =$  \_\_\_\_\_
4.  $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle \geq 0$ , and  $\langle \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{v} \rangle = 0$  iff \_\_\_\_\_

NOTE: The \_\_\_\_\_ product is the \_\_\_\_\_ product for \_\_\_\_\_.

Example 8: Show that the function  $\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle = u_1v_1 + 2u_2v_2 + u_3v_3$  defines an inner product on  $R^3$ , where  $\mathbf{u} = (u_1, u_2, u_3)$  and  $\mathbf{v} = (v_1, v_2, v_3)$ .

Example 9: Show that the function  $\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle = u_1v_1 - u_2v_2 - u_3v_3$  does not define an inner product on  $R^3$ , where  $\mathbf{u} = (u_1, u_2, u_3)$  and  $\mathbf{v} = (v_1, v_2, v_3)$ .

### THEOREM 4.7: PROPERTIES OF INNER PRODUCTS

Let  $\mathbf{u}$ ,  $\mathbf{v}$ , and  $\mathbf{w}$  be vectors in an inner product space  $V$ , and let  $c$  be any real number.

1.  $\langle \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{v} \rangle = \underline{\hspace{2cm}} = \underline{\hspace{2cm}}$

2.  $\langle \mathbf{u} + \mathbf{v}, \mathbf{w} \rangle = \underline{\hspace{2cm}}$

Proof:

3.  $\langle \mathbf{u}, c\mathbf{v} \rangle = \underline{\hspace{2cm}}$

### DEFINITION OF LENGTH, DISTANCE, AND ANGLE

Let  $\mathbf{u}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  be vectors in an inner product space  $V$ .

1. The length (or  $\underline{\hspace{2cm}}$ ) of  $\mathbf{u}$  is  $\underline{\hspace{2cm}}$ .

2. The distance between  $\mathbf{u}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  is  $\underline{\hspace{2cm}}$ .

3. The angle between and two vectors  $\mathbf{u}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  is given by

$\underline{\hspace{2cm}}$ .

4.  $\mathbf{u}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  are orthogonal when  $\underline{\hspace{2cm}}$ .

If \_\_\_\_\_, then  $\mathbf{u}$  is called a \_\_\_\_\_ vector. Moreover, if  $\mathbf{v}$  is any nonzero vector in an inner product space  $V$ , then the vector \_\_\_\_\_ is a \_\_\_\_\_ vector and is called the \_\_\_\_\_ vector in the \_\_\_\_\_ of  $\mathbf{v}$ .

Inner product on  $C[a, b]$  is  $\langle f, g \rangle =$  \_\_\_\_\_.

Inner product on  $M_{2,2}$  is  $\langle A, B \rangle =$  \_\_\_\_\_.

Inner product on  $P_n$  is  $\langle pq \rangle =$  \_\_\_\_\_, where \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

Example 10: Consider the following inner product defined on  $R^n$ :

$$\mathbf{u} = (0, -6), \mathbf{v} = (-1, 1), \text{ and } \langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle = u_1v_1 + 2u_2v_2$$

a. Find  $\langle \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v} \rangle$

b. Find  $\|\mathbf{u}\|$

c. Find  $\|\mathbf{v}\|$

d. Find  $d(\mathbf{u}, \mathbf{v})$



Example 11: Consider the following inner product defined:

$$\langle f, g \rangle = \int_{-1}^1 f(x)g(x)dx, \quad f(x) = -x, \quad g(x) = x^2 - x + 2$$

a. Find  $\langle f, g \rangle$

b. Find  $\|f\|$

c. Find  $\|g\|$

d. Find  $d(f, g)$

### THEOREM 4.8

Let  $\mathbf{u}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  be vectors in an inner product space  $V$ .

Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality: \_\_\_\_\_

Triangle Inequality: \_\_\_\_\_

Pythagorean Theorem:  $\mathbf{u}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  are orthogonal if and only if  
\_\_\_\_\_

Example 12: Verify the triangle inequality for  $A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$ ,  $B = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 2 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$ , and

$$\langle A, B \rangle = a_{11}b_{11} + a_{21}b_{21} + a_{12}b_{12} + a_{22}b_{22}.$$

### DEFINITION OF ORTHOGONAL PROJECTION

Let  $\mathbf{u}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  be vectors in an inner product space  $V$ , such that  $\mathbf{v} \neq \mathbf{0}$ . Then the orthogonal projection of  $\mathbf{u}$  onto  $\mathbf{v}$  is

## THEOREM 5.9: ORTHOGONAL PROJECTION AND DISTANCE

Let  $\mathbf{u}$  and  $\mathbf{v}$  be vectors in an inner product space  $V$ , such that  $\mathbf{v} \neq \mathbf{0}$ . Then

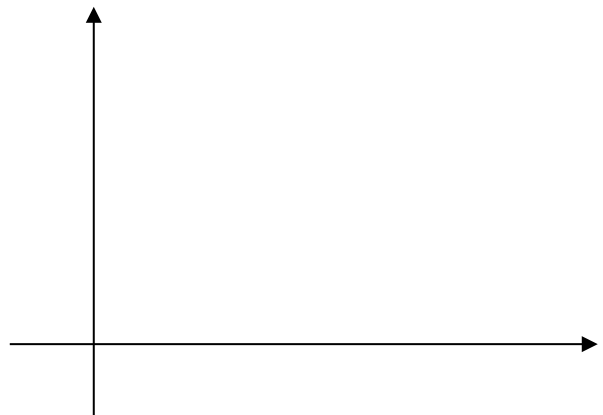
Example 13: Consider the vectors

$\mathbf{u} = (-1, -2)$  and  $\mathbf{v} = (4, 2)$ . Use the Euclidean inner product to find the following:

a.  $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}} \mathbf{u}$

b.  $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{u}} \mathbf{v}$

c. Sketch the graph of both  $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{v}} \mathbf{u}$  and  $\text{proj}_{\mathbf{u}} \mathbf{v}$ .



## 4.2: ORTHONORMAL BASES: GRAM-SCHMIDT PROCESS

### Learning Objectives:

1. Show that a set of vectors is orthogonal and forms an orthonormal basis, and represent a vector relative to an orthonormal basis
2. Apply the Gram-Schmidt orthonormalization process

Consider the standard basis for  $\mathbb{R}^3$ , which is

This set is the standard basis because it has useful characteristics such as...The three vectors in the basis are

\_\_\_\_\_, and they are each \_\_\_\_\_.

### DEFINITIONS OF ORTHOGONAL AND ORTHONORMAL SETS

A set  $S$  of a vector space  $V$  is called orthogonal when every pair of vectors in  $S$  is orthogonal. If, in addition, each vector in the set is a unit vector, then  $S$  is called

\_\_\_\_\_. For  $S = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$ , this definition has the following form.

#### ORTHOGONAL

#### ORTHONORMAL

If \_\_\_\_\_ is a \_\_\_\_\_, then it is an \_\_\_\_\_ basis or an \_\_\_\_\_ basis, respectively.

### THEOREM 4.10: ORTHOGONAL SETS ARE LINEARLY INDEPENDENT

If  $S = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  is an orthogonal set of \_\_\_\_\_ vectors in an inner product space  $V$ , then  $S$  is linearly independent.

Proof:

### THEOREM 4.10: COROLLARY

If  $V$  is an inner product space of dimension  $n$ , then any orthogonal set of  $n$  nonzero vectors is a basis for  $V$ .

Example 1: Consider the following set in  $R^4$ .

$$\left\{ \left( \frac{\sqrt{10}}{10}, 0, 0, \frac{3\sqrt{10}}{10} \right), (0, 0, 1, 0), (0, 1, 0, 0), \left( -\frac{3\sqrt{10}}{10}, 0, 0, \frac{\sqrt{10}}{10} \right) \right\}$$

- a. Determine whether the set of vectors is orthogonal.
- b. If the set is orthogonal, then determine whether it is also orthonormal.
- c. Determine whether the set is a basis for  $R^n$ .

### THEOREM 4.11: COORDINATES RELATIVE TO AN ORTHONORMAL BASIS

If  $B = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  is an orthonormal basis for an inner product space  $V$ , then the coordinate representation of a vector  $\mathbf{w}$  relative to  $B$  is

Proof:

The coordinates of \_\_\_\_\_ relative to the \_\_\_\_\_ basis \_\_\_\_\_ are called the \_\_\_\_\_ coefficients of \_\_\_\_\_ relative to \_\_\_\_\_. The corresponding coordinate matrix of \_\_\_\_\_ relative to \_\_\_\_\_ is

Example 2: Show that the set of vectors  $\{(2, -5), (10, 4)\}$  in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  is orthogonal and normalize the set to produce an orthonormal set.

Example 3: Find the coordinate matrix of  $\mathbf{x} = (-3, 4)$  relative to the orthonormal basis

$$B = \left\{ \left( \frac{\sqrt{5}}{5}, \frac{2\sqrt{5}}{5} \right), \left( -\frac{2\sqrt{5}}{5}, \frac{\sqrt{5}}{5} \right) \right\} \text{ in } \mathbb{R}^2. \text{ Use the dot product as the inner product.}$$

#### THEOREM 4.12: GRAM-SCHMIDT ORTHONORMALIZATION PROCESS

Let  $B = \{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_n\}$  be a basis for an inner product  $V$ .

Let  $B' = \{\mathbf{w}_1, \mathbf{w}_2, \dots, \mathbf{w}_n\}$ , where  $\mathbf{w}_i$  is given by

$$\mathbf{w}_1 = \mathbf{v}_1$$

$$\mathbf{w}_2 = \mathbf{v}_2 - \frac{\langle \mathbf{v}_2, \mathbf{w}_1 \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}_1, \mathbf{w}_1 \rangle} \mathbf{w}_1$$

$$\mathbf{w}_3 = \mathbf{v}_3 - \frac{\langle \mathbf{v}_3, \mathbf{w}_1 \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}_1, \mathbf{w}_1 \rangle} \mathbf{w}_1 - \frac{\langle \mathbf{v}_3, \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}_2, \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle} \mathbf{w}_2$$

$\vdots$

$$\mathbf{w}_n = \mathbf{v}_n - \frac{\langle \mathbf{v}_n, \mathbf{w}_1 \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}_1, \mathbf{w}_1 \rangle} \mathbf{w}_1 - \frac{\langle \mathbf{v}_n, \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}_2, \mathbf{w}_2 \rangle} \mathbf{w}_2 - \dots - \frac{\langle \mathbf{v}_n, \mathbf{w}_{n-1} \rangle}{\langle \mathbf{w}_{n-1}, \mathbf{w}_{n-1} \rangle} \mathbf{w}_{n-1}$$

Let  $\mathbf{u}_i = \frac{\mathbf{w}_i}{\|\mathbf{w}_i\|}$ . Then the set  $B'' = \{\mathbf{u}_1, \mathbf{u}_2, \dots, \mathbf{u}_n\}$  is an orthonormal basis for  $V$ . Moreover,

$$\text{span}\{\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2, \dots, \mathbf{v}_k\} = \text{span}\{\mathbf{u}_1, \mathbf{u}_2, \dots, \mathbf{u}_k\} \text{ for } k = 1, 2, \dots, n.$$





Example 4: Apply the Gram-Schmidt orthonormalization process to transform the basis  $B = \{(1, 0, 0), (1, 1, 1), (1, 1, -1)\}$  for a subspace in  $\mathbb{R}^3$  into an orthonormal basis. Use the Euclidean inner product on  $\mathbb{R}^3$  and use the vectors in the order they are given.

## 4.3: MATHEMATICAL MODELS AND LEAST SQUARES ANALYSIS

### Learning Objectives:

1. When you are done with your homework you should be able to...
2. Define the least squares problem
3. Find the orthogonal complement of a subspace and the projection of a vector onto a subspace
4. Find the four fundamental subspaces of a matrix
5. Solve a least squares problem
6. Use least squares for mathematical modeling

In this section we will study \_\_\_\_\_ systems of linear equations and learn how to find the \_\_\_\_\_ of such a system.

### LEAST SQUARES PROBLEM

Given an  $m \times n$  matrix  $A$  and a vector  $\mathbf{b}$  in  $R^m$ , the \_\_\_\_\_ problem is to find \_\_\_\_\_ in  $R^n$  such that \_\_\_\_\_ is \_\_\_\_\_.

### DEFINITION OF ORTHOGONAL SUBSPACES

The subspaces  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  of  $R^n$  are orthogonal when \_\_\_\_\_ for all  $\mathbf{v}_1$  in  $S_1$  and  $\mathbf{v}_2$  in  $S_2$ .

Example 1: Are the following subspaces orthogonal?

$$S_1 = \text{span} \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \right\} \text{ and } S_2 = \text{span} \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

## DEFINITION OF ORTHOGONAL COMPLEMENT

If  $S$  is a subspace of  $R^n$ , then the orthogonal complement of  $S$  is the set

What's the orthogonal complement of  $\{\mathbf{0}\}$  in  $R^n$ ?

What's the orthogonal complement of  $R^n$ ?

## DEFINITION OF DIRECT SUM

Let  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  be two subspaces of  $R^n$ . If each vector \_\_\_\_\_ can be uniquely written as the sum of a vector \_\_\_\_ from \_\_\_\_ and a vector \_\_\_\_ from \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, then \_\_\_\_\_ is the direct sum of \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_, and you can write \_\_\_\_\_.

Example 2: Find the orthogonal complement  $S^\perp$ , and find the direct sum  $S \oplus S^\perp$ .

$$S = \text{span} \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right\}$$

### THEOREM 4.13: PROPERTIES OF ORTHOGONAL SUBSPACES

Let  $S$  be a subspace of  $R^n$ , Then the following properties are true.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_

### THEOREM 4.14: PROJECTION ONTO A SUBSPACE

If  $\{\mathbf{u}_1, \mathbf{u}_2, \dots, \mathbf{u}_t\}$  is an orthonormal basis for the subspace  $S$  of  $R^n$ , and  $\mathbf{v} \in R^n$ , then

Example 3: Find the projection of the vector  $\mathbf{v}$  onto the subspace  $S$ .

$$S = \text{span} \left\{ \begin{bmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \right\}, \quad \mathbf{v} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

### THEOREM 4.15: ORTHOGONAL PROJECTION AND DISTANCE

Let  $S$  be a subspace of  $R^n$  and let  $\mathbf{v} \in R^n$ . Then, for all  $\mathbf{u} \in S$ ,  $\mathbf{u} \neq \text{proj}_S \mathbf{v}$ ,

## FUNDAMENTAL SUBSPACES OF A MATRIX

Recall that if  $A$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix, then the column space of  $A$  is a \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ consisting of all vectors of the form \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_. The four fundamental subspaces of the matrix  $A$  are defined as follows.

\_\_\_\_\_ = nullspace of  $A$

\_\_\_\_\_ = nullspace of  $A^T$

\_\_\_\_\_ = column space of  $A$

\_\_\_\_\_ = column space of  $A^T$

Example 4: Find bases for the four fundamental subspaces of the matrix

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}.$$

## THEOREM 4.16: FUNDAMENTAL SUBSPACES OF A MATRIX

If  $A$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix, then

\_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ are orthogonal subspaces of \_\_\_\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ are orthogonal subspaces of \_\_\_\_\_.

---



---



---

## SOLVING THE LEAST SQUARES PROBLEM

Recall that we are attempting to find a vector  $\mathbf{x}$  that minimizes \_\_\_\_\_,

where  $A$  is an  $m \times n$  matrix and  $\mathbf{b}$  is a vector in  $R^m$ . Let  $\mathcal{S}$  be the column space

of  $A$ : \_\_\_\_\_. Assume that  $\mathbf{b}$  is not in  $\mathcal{S}$ , because otherwise the

system  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$  would be \_\_\_\_\_. We are looking for a

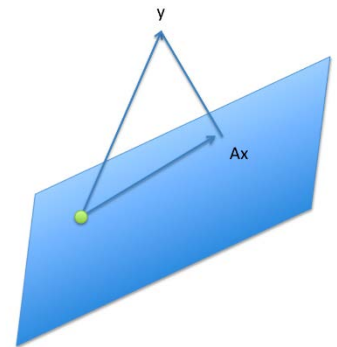
vector \_\_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_\_ that is as close as possible to \_\_\_\_\_. This desired vector is

the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ onto \_\_\_\_\_. So, \_\_\_\_\_

and \_\_\_\_\_ = \_\_\_\_\_ is orthogonal to \_\_\_\_\_. However,

this implies that \_\_\_\_\_ is in \_\_\_\_\_, which equals \_\_\_\_\_. So, \_\_\_\_\_ is in

the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_.



The solution of the least squares problem comes down to solving the \_\_\_\_\_ linear system of equations

\_\_\_\_\_. These equations are called the \_\_\_\_\_ equations of the least squares

problem \_\_\_\_\_.

Example 5: Find the least squares solution of the system  $A\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{b}$ .

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \mathbf{b} = \begin{bmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 2 \end{bmatrix}$$



Example 6: The table shows the numbers of doctoral degrees  $y$  (in thousands) awarded in the United States from 2005 through 2008. Find the least squares regression line for the data. Then use the model to predict the number of degrees awarded in 2015. Let  $t$  represent the year, with  $t = 5$  corresponding to 2005. (Source: U.S. National Center for Education Statistics)

<b>Year</b>	<b>2005</b>	<b>2006</b>	<b>2007</b>	<b>2008</b>
<b>Doctoral Degrees, <math>y</math></b>	52.6	56.1	60.6	63.7

## 4.4: EIGENVALUES AND EIGENVECTORS, AND DIAGONALIZING MATRICES

### Learning Objectives:

1. Verify eigenvalues and corresponding eigenvectors
2. Find eigenvectors and corresponding eigenspaces
3. Use the characteristic equation to find eigenvalues and eigenvectors, and find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of a triangular matrix
4. Find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of a linear transformation

### THE EIGENVALUE PROBLEM

One of the most important problems in linear algebra is the **eigenvalue problem**. When  $A$  is an  $n \times n$ , do

nonzero vectors  $\mathbf{x}$  in  $R^n$  exist such that  $A\mathbf{x}$  is a \_\_\_\_\_ multiple of  $\mathbf{x}$ ? The scalar, denoted by \_\_\_\_\_ (\_\_\_\_\_), is called an \_\_\_\_\_ of the matrix  $A$ , and the nonzero vector  $\mathbf{x}$  is called an \_\_\_\_\_ of  $A$  corresponding to  $\lambda$ .

### DEFINITIONS OF EIGENVALUE AND EIGENVECTOR

Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix. The scalar \_\_\_\_\_ is called an \_\_\_\_\_ of  $A$  when there is a \_\_\_\_\_ vector  $\mathbf{x}$  such that \_\_\_\_\_. The vector  $\mathbf{x}$  is called an \_\_\_\_\_ of  $A$  corresponding to  $\lambda$ .

\*Note that an eigenvector cannot be \_\_\_\_\_. Why not?

Example 1: Determine whether  $\mathbf{x}$  is an eigenvector of  $A$ .

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -3 & 10 \\ 5 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

a.  $\mathbf{x} = (-8, 4)$

b.  $\mathbf{x} = (5, -3)$

### THEOREM 4.17: EIGENVECTORS OF $\lambda$ FORM A SUBSPACE

If  $A$  is an  $n \times n$  matrix with an eigenvalue  $\lambda$ , then the set of all eigenvectors of  $\lambda$ , together with the zero vector

is a subspace of  $R^n$ . This subspace is called the \_\_\_\_\_ of  $\lambda$ .

Proof:

### THEOREM 4.18: EIGENVALUES AND EIGENVECTORS OF A MATRIX

Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix.

1. An eigenvalue of  $A$  is a scalar  $\lambda$  such that \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The eigenvectors of  $A$  corresponding to  $\lambda$  are the \_\_\_\_\_ solutions of \_\_\_\_\_.

\* The equation \_\_\_\_\_ is called the \_\_\_\_\_ of  $A$ . When expanded to polynomial form, the polynomial is called the \_\_\_\_\_ of  $A$ . This definition tells you that the \_\_\_\_\_ of an  $n \times n$  matrix  $A$  correspond to the \_\_\_\_\_ of the characteristic polynomial of  $A$ .

Example 2: Find (a) the characteristic equation and (b) the eigenvalues (and corresponding eigenvectors) of the matrix.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

## THEOREM 4.19: EIGENVALUES OF TRIANGULAR MATRICES

If  $A$  is an  $n \times n$  triangular matrix, then its eigenvalues are the entries on its main \_\_\_\_\_.

Example 3: Find the eigenvalues of the triangular matrix.

$$\begin{bmatrix} -5 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & 7 & 0 \\ 4 & -2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

## EIGENVALUES AND EIGENVECTORS OF LINEAR TRANSFORMATIONS

A number  $\lambda$  is called an \_\_\_\_\_ of a linear transformation \_\_\_\_\_ when there is a \_\_\_\_\_ vector \_\_\_\_\_ such that \_\_\_\_\_. The vector  $\mathbf{x}$  is called an \_\_\_\_\_ of  $T$  corresponding to  $\lambda$ , and the set of all eigenvectors of  $\lambda$  (with the zero vector) is called the \_\_\_\_\_ of  $\lambda$ .

Example 4: Consider the linear transformation  $T: R^n \rightarrow R^n$  whose matrix  $A$  relative to the standard base is given. Find (a) the eigenvalues of  $A$ , (b) a basis for each of the corresponding eigenspaces, and (c) the matrix  $A'$  for  $T$  relative to the basis  $B'$ , where  $B'$  is made up of the basis vectors found in part b).

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -6 & 2 \\ 3 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

## 4.5: DIAGONALIZATION

### Learning Objectives:

1. Find the eigenvectors of similar matrices, determine whether a matrix  $A$  is diagonalizable, and find a matrix  $P$  such that  $P^{-1}AP$  is diagonal
2. Find, for a linear transformation  $T: V \rightarrow V$ , a basis  $B$  for  $V$  such that the matrix for  $T$  relative to  $B$  is diagonal

### DEFINITION OF A DIAGONALIZABLE MATRIX

An  $n \times n$  matrix  $A$  is diagonalizable when  $A$  is similar to a diagonal matrix. That is,  $A$  is diagonalizable when there exists an invertible matrix \_\_\_\_\_ such that \_\_\_\_\_ is a diagonal matrix.

### THEOREM 4.20: SIMILAR MATRICES HAVE THE SAME EIGENVALUES

If  $A$  and  $B$  are similar  $n \times n$  matrices, then they have the same \_\_\_\_\_.

Proof:

Example 1: (a) verify that  $A$  is diagonalizable by computing  $P^{-1}AP$ , and (b) use the result of part (a) and Theorem 4.20 to find the eigenvalues of  $A$ .

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ -1 & 5 \end{bmatrix}, P = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

#### THEOREM 4.21: CONDITION FOR DIAGONALIZATION

An  $n \times n$  matrix  $A$  is diagonalizable if and only if it has  $n$  \_\_\_\_\_  
eigenvectors.

Proof:

Example 2: For the matrix  $A$ , find, if possible, a nonsingular matrix  $P$  such that  $P^{-1}AP$  is diagonal. Verify  $P^{-1}AP$  is a diagonal matrix with the eigenvalues on the main diagonal.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 4 & 0 & 0 \\ 2 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$



## STEPS FOR DIAGONALIZING AN $n \times n$ SQUARE MATRIX

Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix.

1. Find  $n$  linearly independent eigenvectors \_\_\_\_\_ for  $A$  (if possible) with corresponding eigenvalues \_\_\_\_\_. If  $n$  linearly independent eigenvectors do not exist, then  $A$  is not diagonalizable.
2. Let  $P$  be the  $n \times n$  matrix whose columns consist of these eigenvectors. That is, \_\_\_\_\_ . The diagonal matrix \_\_\_\_\_ will have the eigenvalues \_\_\_\_\_ on its main \_\_\_\_\_ (and \_\_\_\_\_ elsewhere). Note that the order of the eigenvectors used to form  $P$  will determine the order in which the eigenvalues appear on the main \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_.

### THEOREM 4.22: SUFFICIENT CONDITION FOR DIAGONALIZATION

If an  $n \times n$  matrix  $A$  has \_\_\_\_\_ eigenvalues, then the corresponding eigenvectors are \_\_\_\_\_ and  $A$  is \_\_\_\_\_.

Proof:

Example 3: Find the eigenvalues of the matrix and determine whether there is a sufficient number to guarantee that the matrix is diagonalizable.

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 5 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Example 4: Find a basis  $B$  for the domain of  $T$  such that the matrix for  $T$  relative to  $B$  is diagonal.

$$T : \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3 : T(x, y, z) = (-2x + 2y - 3z, 2x + y - 6z, -x - 2y)$$



## 4.5: SYMMETRIC MATRICES AND ORTHOGONAL DIAGONALIZATION

### Learning Objectives:

1. Recognize, and apply properties of, symmetric matrices
2. Recognize, and apply properties of, orthogonal matrices
3. Find an orthogonal matrix  $P$  that orthogonally diagonalizes a symmetric matrix  $A$

### SYMMETRIC MATRICES

Symmetric matrices arise more often in \_\_\_\_\_ than any other major class of matrices.

The theory depends on both \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. For

most matrices, you need to go through most of the diagonalization \_\_\_\_\_ to ascertain whether a

matrix is \_\_\_\_\_. We learned about one exception, a \_\_\_\_\_ matrix,

which has \_\_\_\_\_ entries on the main \_\_\_\_\_. Another type of matrix which

is guaranteed to be \_\_\_\_\_ is a \_\_\_\_\_ matrix.

### DEFINITION OF SYMMETRIC MATRIX

A square matrix  $A$  is \_\_\_\_\_ when it is equal to its \_\_\_\_\_:\_\_\_\_\_.

Example 1: Determine which of the matrices below are symmetric.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -2 & 5 \\ 5 & 1 \end{bmatrix}, B = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & 5 & 4 \\ 5 & 1 & 0 \\ 4 & 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}, C = \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}, D = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 2 & 7 & 1 & 0 \\ 3 & 1 & 7 & 2 \\ 4 & 0 & 2 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

Example 2: Using the diagonalization process, determine if  $A$  is diagonalizable. If so, diagonalize the matrix  $A$ .

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 6 & -1 \\ -1 & 5 \end{bmatrix}$$

## THEOREM 4.23: PROPERTIES OF SYMMETRIC MATRICES

If  $A$  is an  $n \times n$  symmetric matrix, then the following properties are true.

1.  $A$  is \_\_\_\_\_.
2. All \_\_\_\_\_ of  $A$  are \_\_\_\_\_.
3. If  $\lambda$  is an \_\_\_\_\_ of  $A$  with multiplicity \_\_\_\_\_, then \_\_\_\_\_ has \_\_\_\_\_ linearly \_\_\_\_\_ eigenvectors. That is, the \_\_\_\_\_ of  $\lambda$  has dimension \_\_\_\_\_.

Proof of Property 1 (for a  $2 \times 2$  symmetric matrix):

Example 3: Prove that the symmetric matrix is diagonalizable.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} a & a & a \\ a & a & a \\ a & a & a \end{bmatrix}$$

Example 4: Find the eigenvalues of the symmetric matrix. For each eigenvalue, find the dimension of the corresponding eigenspace.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 & -1 \\ -1 & 2 & -1 \\ -1 & -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

## DEFINITION OF AN ORTHOGONAL MATRIX

A square matrix  $P$  is \_\_\_\_\_ when it is \_\_\_\_\_ and when \_\_\_\_\_.

## THEOREM 4.24: PROPERTY OF ORTHOGONAL MATRICES

An  $n \times n$  matrix  $P$  is orthogonal if and only if its \_\_\_\_\_ vectors form an \_\_\_\_\_ set.

Example 5: Determine whether the matrix is orthogonal. If the matrix is orthogonal, then show that the column vectors of the matrix form an orthonormal set.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{4}{5} & 0 & \frac{3}{5} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \frac{3}{5} & 0 & \frac{4}{5} \end{bmatrix}$$



### THEOREM 4.25: PROPERTY OF SYMMETRIC MATRICES

Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  symmetric matrix. If  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$  are \_\_\_\_\_ eigenvalues of  $A$ , then their corresponding \_\_\_\_\_  $\mathbf{x}_1$  and  $\mathbf{x}_2$  are \_\_\_\_\_.

### THEOREM 4.26: FUNDAMENTAL THEOREM OF SYMMETRIC MATRICES

Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  matrix. Then  $A$  is \_\_\_\_\_ and has \_\_\_\_\_ eigenvalues if and only if  $A$  is \_\_\_\_\_.

Proof:

### STEPS FOR DIAGONALIZING A SYMMETRIC MATRIX

Let  $A$  be an  $n \times n$  symmetric matrix.

1. Find all \_\_\_\_\_ of  $A$  and determine the \_\_\_\_\_ of each.
2. For \_\_\_\_\_ eigenvalue of multiplicity \_\_\_\_\_, find a \_\_\_\_\_ eigenvector. That is, find any \_\_\_\_\_ and then \_\_\_\_\_ it.
3. For \_\_\_\_\_ eigenvalue of multiplicity \_\_\_\_\_, find a set of \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_ eigenvectors. If this set is not \_\_\_\_\_, apply the \_\_\_\_\_ process.
4. The results of steps 2 and 3 produce an \_\_\_\_\_ set of \_\_\_\_\_ eigenvectors. Use these eigenvectors to form the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_. The matrix \_\_\_\_\_ will be \_\_\_\_\_. The main entries of \_\_\_\_\_ are the \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_.

Example 5: Find a matrix  $P$  such that  $P^T A P$  orthogonally diagonalizes  $A$ . Verify that  $P^T A P$  gives the proper diagonal form.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Example 6: Prove that if a symmetric matrix  $A$  has only one eigenvalue  $\lambda$ , then  $A = \lambda I$ .

## 4.6: APPLICATIONS OF EIGENVALUES AND EIGENVECTORS

### Learning Objectives:

1. Find the matrix of a quadratic form and use the Principal Axes Theorem to perform a rotation of axes for a conic and a quadric

### QUADRATIC FORMS

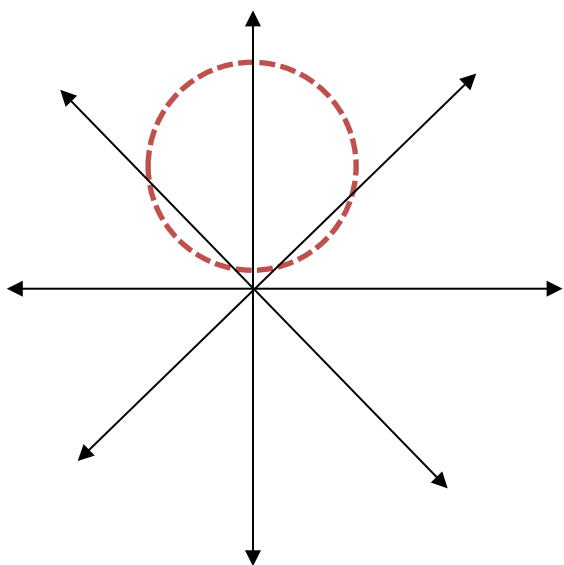
Every conic section in the  $xy$ -plane can be written as:

If the equation of the conic has no  $xy$ -term (\_\_\_\_\_), then the axes of the graphs are parallel to the coordinate axes. For second-degree equations that have an  $xy$ -term, it is helpful to first perform a

\_\_\_\_\_ of axes that eliminates the  $xy$ -term. The required rotation angle is  $\cot 2\theta = \frac{a-c}{b}$ . With

this rotation, the standard basis for  $R^2$ , \_\_\_\_\_ is rotated to form the new basis

\_\_\_\_\_.



Example 1: Find the coordinates of a point  $(x, y)$  in  $R^2$  relative to the basis

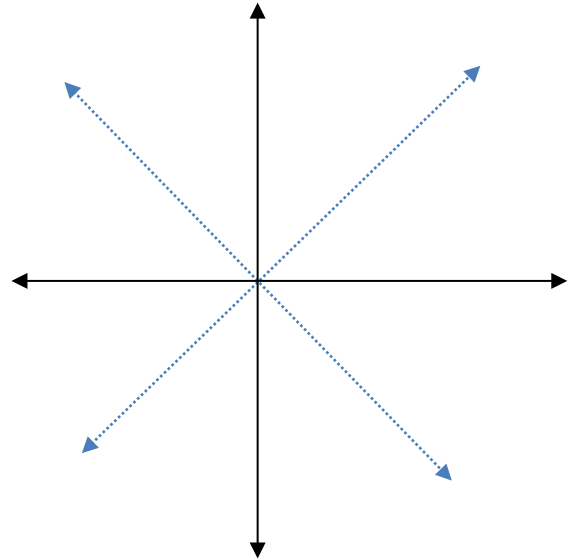
$$B' = \{(\cos \theta, \sin \theta), (-\sin \theta, \cos \theta)\}.$$

## ROTATION OF AXES

The general second-degree equation  $ax^2 + bxy + cy^2 + dx + ey + f = 0$  can be written in the form  $a'(x')^2 + c'(y')^2 + d'x' + e'y' + f' = 0$  by rotating the coordinate axes counterclockwise through the angle  $\theta$ , where  $\theta$  is defined by  $\cot 2\theta = \frac{a-c}{b}$ . The coefficients of the new equation are obtained from the substitutions  $x = x' \cos \theta - y' \sin \theta$  and  $y = x' \sin \theta + y' \cos \theta$ .

Example 2: Perform a rotation of axes to eliminate the  $xy$ -terms in

$5x^2 - 6xy + 5y^2 + 14\sqrt{2}x - 2\sqrt{2}y + 18 = 0$ . Sketch the graph of the resulting equation.



\_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ can be used to solve the rotation of axes problem. It turns out that the coefficients  $a'$  and  $c'$  are eigenvalues of the matrix

The expression \_\_\_\_\_ is called the \_\_\_\_\_ form associated with the quadratic equation and the matrix \_\_\_\_\_ is called the \_\_\_\_\_ of the \_\_\_\_\_ form. Note that \_\_\_\_\_ is \_\_\_\_\_. Moreover, \_\_\_\_\_ will be \_\_\_\_\_ if and only if its corresponding quadratic form has no \_\_\_\_\_ term.

Example 3: Find the matrix of quadratic form associated with each quadratic equation.

a.  $x^2 + 4y^2 + 4 = 0$

b.  $5x^2 - 6xy + 5y^2 + 14\sqrt{2}x - 2\sqrt{2}y + 18 = 0$

Now, let's check out how to use the matrix of quadratic form to perform a rotation of axes.

Let  $X = \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \end{bmatrix}$ . Then the quadratic expression  $ax^2 + bxy + cy^2 + dx + ey + f$  can be written in matrix form as follows:

If \_\_\_\_\_, then no \_\_\_\_\_ is necessary. But if \_\_\_\_\_, then because \_\_\_\_\_ is symmetric, you may conclude that there exists an \_\_\_\_\_ matrix \_\_\_\_\_ such that \_\_\_\_\_ is diagonal. So, if you let

then it follows that \_\_\_\_\_, and

The choice of \_\_\_\_ must be made with care. Since \_\_\_\_ is orthogonal, its determinant will be \_\_\_\_\_. If  $P$  is chosen so that  $|P|=1$ , then  $P$  will be of the form

where  $\theta$  gives the angle of rotation of the conic measured from the \_\_\_\_\_ x-axis to the positive  $x'$ -axis.

### PRINCIPAL AXES THEOREM

For a conic whose equation is  $ax^2 + bxy + cy^2 + dx + ey + f = 0$ , the rotation given by \_\_\_\_\_ eliminates the  $xy$ -term when  $P$  is an orthogonal matrix, with  $|P|=1$ , that diagonalizes  $A$ . That is

where  $\lambda_1$  and  $\lambda_2$  are eigenvalues of  $A$ . The equation of the rotated conic is given by

Example 4: Use the Principal Axes Theorem to perform a rotation of axes to eliminate the  $xy$ -term in the quadratic equation. Identify the resulting rotated conic and give its equation in the new coordinate system.

$$5x^2 - 6xy + 5y^2 + 14\sqrt{2}x - 2\sqrt{2}y + 18 = 0$$

